

Ace the Digital SAT[®] with AI

Boost Your Score with
ChatGPT™ & Smart Tools
Without Cheating

Mammoth Club Official Study Guide
& Total Prep Book:



- ✓ FREE Online Course
- ✓ FREE 101+ Question Practice Exam
- ✓ FREE 101+ Answers & Explanations
- ✓ FREE Cheatsheet
- ✓ FREE Official Mammoth Club Certificate



Written by Alex Kropf • Edited by John Bura

Cover Design by Jared Matson & John Bura • Contributions by James Dabalus

Powered by  CoursePro.ai

*From the creators of the best-selling Hello Coding: Anyone
Can Learn to Code & more*

Praise for Mammoth Club

I have completed many tutorials. This one is the most outstanding one that I have seen thus far. It is doubtful that it could be topped. This is a superior tutorial. Amazing. —Joseph A., Mammoth Club Student

Exactly what I wanted! Just enough BASIC information without being technically overwhelming and intimidating. —Paul V., Mammoth Club Student

This course so far is by far amazing! The instructor is very encouraging and upbeat, and his instructions are very clear. It's an amazing course. —Moiz S., Mammoth Club Student

It's scary to think that by following these instructional videos I can be equipped with the skills to program Python. —Charles E., Mammoth Club Student

I ended up taking it and it was INCREDIBLE. They set great challenges that build off what was taught in the lecture, but don't directly give you the answer. It asks you to extend your knowledge and refer to the right documentation. So good for learning. —A_Unicycle, Mammoth Club Student

This is AMAZING! I just learned how to code without breaking a sweat, this is really easy and fun! —Shalonda L., Mammoth Club Student

Clear instructions and excellent projects. —Ian F., Mammoth Club Student





Go to MammothClub.com to access 3,000+ online courses and 5,000+ hours of video content!

All rights reserved. Portions of this book may be shared promotionally if with direct citation to MammothClub.com. This book may not be reproduced — mechanically, electronically, or by any other means, including photocopying — without written permission of the publisher.

Mammoth Club is a leading online course provider in everything from learning to code to becoming a YouTube star. Since 2011, Mammoth Club has built a global student community with over 9 million courses sold.

Mammoth Club books can be purchased at a special discount when ordered in bulk for promotional giveaways, fundraisers, or educational initiatives. Customized editions or selected excerpts can also be produced to meet specific needs. For more information, please reach out to support@mammothinteractive.com.



The publisher does not provide medical, legal, accounting, or other professional services. Readers seeking such expertise should consult a qualified professional. This book is not meant to be used for clinical procedures or medical treatment. To the maximum extent permitted by law, the publisher and editors are not responsible for any harm or damage to individuals or property resulting from the use or misuse of the material presented herein.

Written by Alex Kropf • Proofread and edited by John Bura • Brought to you by MammothClub.com • Online Course and Cheatsheet by James Dabalus

Cover Design by Jared Matson and John Bura • Interior Book Design, Outline and Layout by Alex Kropf

Copyright © 2025 by Mammoth Club

Scan the QR code or go this link to redeem your free course and cheat sheet:

www.mammothclub.com/course/1-hour-sat/ACE



Table of Contents

| | |
|--|-----------|
| Praise for Mammoth Club | 2 |
| Introduction | 6 |
| AI for the Digital SAT | 6 |
| PART 1 - WELCOME TO THE DIGITAL SAT | 8 |
| Understanding the Digital SAT | 8 |
| Key Sections of the Digital SAT: Reading, Writing, Math | 8 |
| The Adaptive, Digital SAT: Structure and Scoring Breakdown | 10 |
| PART 2 — SAT MATH | 12 |
| SAT Math Prerequisites | 12 |
| SAT Algebra | 29 |
| Linear Equations and Graphs | 29 |
| Systems of Linear Equations | 50 |
| Inequalities | 59 |
| Linear Functions | 69 |
| SAT Problem-Solving and Data Analysis | 81 |
| Rates, Ratios, Proportions, Percents, & Units | 81 |
| Tables, Statistics and Probability | 104 |
| Scatterplots | 121 |
| SAT Advanced Math | 134 |
| Absolute Value and Nonlinear Functions | 134 |
| Exponents, Radicals, Polynomials and Rational Expressions | 148 |
| Quadratics | 156 |
| SAT Geometry and Trigonometry | 170 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| SAT Geometry | 170 |
| SAT Trigonometry: Sine, Cosine, and Tangent | 188 |
| PART 3 — SAT READING & WRITING | 200 |
| Information and Ideas | 200 |
| Craft and Structure | 211 |
| Expression of Ideas | 227 |
| Standard English Conventions | 243 |
| PART 4 — AI FOR THE SAT | 264 |
| How To Use AI for SAT Math Success | 264 |
| Train for SAT Math Questions with AI | 265 |
| How To Use AI for SAT Reading and Writing Success | 268 |
| Train for SAT Reading and Writing Questions with AI | 268 |
| PART 5 - PRACTICE EXAM | 270 |
| SAT Math Questions | 271 |
| SAT Reading and Writing Questions | 281 |
| SAT Math: Answers and Explanations | 297 |
| SAT Reading and Writing: Answers and Explanations | 304 |
| WHERE TO GO FROM HERE | 311 |
| Get the FREE Online Course and Certificate | 311 |
| Add to LinkedIn & Resumé | 311 |
| About Your Author | 313 |
| Note From Your Author | 313 |
| VISIT MAMMOTHCLUB.COM | 314 |

Introduction

The SAT has evolved, and with its latest redesign, preparing effectively is more crucial than ever. Artificial Intelligence (AI), particularly tools like ChatGPT, can significantly enhance your preparation—but only if used strategically.

AI for the Digital SAT

Unlike traditional study methods, AI tools like ChatGPT offer interactive, personalized learning experiences. By analyzing your strengths and weaknesses, these AI-driven platforms provide tailored practice questions, explanations, and learning plans.

AI as Your Personal Tutor

For instance, if you struggle with interpreting complex texts, an AI tutor can generate practice passages and provide step-by-step reasoning on how to break down dense language into understandable ideas.

Adaptive Practice for Targeted Improvement

The SAT emphasizes real-world contexts and reasoning skills. AI can adaptively challenge you with relevant, up-to-date reading passages and math scenarios reflective of these changes. Instead of static practice tests, AI-driven platforms continuously adjust question difficulty, ensuring that you're constantly progressing. If geometry remains challenging, AI tools dynamically introduce geometric problems incrementally, offering guidance until you're confidently solving problems independently.

Instant Feedback and Learning Acceleration

Immediate feedback is essential for learning. AI systems can instantly correct your answers and explain mistakes clearly, turning each error into a teachable moment. Consider a challenging grammar question—AI can instantly pinpoint grammatical rules you're misunderstanding, allowing you to correct misconceptions immediately rather than perpetuating them through repeated mistakes.

Improving Writing and Reading with AI

The SAT Writing and Reading sections demand nuanced interpretation and effective communication. AI tools like ChatGPT help refine your critical reading and persuasive writing skills by generating practice prompts, helping structure coherent arguments, and suggesting vocabulary improvements. Engaging with AI can significantly boost your writing fluency and precision.

Math Mastery with AI

The revised SAT places significant emphasis on applied math problems reflecting everyday scenarios. AI tools not only provide problem-solving practice but also explain underlying mathematical concepts clearly. Struggling with data analysis or algebraic modeling? AI tutors can guide you step-by-step through these complex concepts, breaking down problems into manageable parts and illustrating real-world applications.

Strategic Test-Taking Skills

Success on the SAT is not just about content mastery but also test-taking strategy. AI can simulate realistic testing conditions, allowing you to practice time management, guessing strategies, and stress management techniques. Engaging regularly with AI-driven practice tests helps build confidence, reduces anxiety, and prepares you mentally for exam day.

Complementing Traditional Learning

AI is a powerful enhancer but not a standalone solution. To maximize effectiveness, use AI alongside traditional classroom learning, textbooks, and group studies. Teachers and tutors can guide you in areas AI might overlook, providing a balanced approach combining human insight with the adaptive capabilities of artificial intelligence.

The Winning Combination

Ultimately, leveraging AI alongside traditional educational resources creates a potent combination that can significantly boost your SAT performance. By embracing this balanced approach, you'll master the content, develop sharp reasoning skills, and approach test day confidently and effectively prepared.

PART 1 – Welcome to the Digital SAT

Understanding the Digital SAT

The SAT (or “SATs”) is a standardized test widely used for college admissions in the United States. It assesses a student's readiness for college through sections including reading, writing and language, and mathematics.

Overall Test Details

- **Total Questions:** 98
- **Total Time:** 2 hours and 14 minutes (excluding a 10-minute break between sections)
- **Adaptive Format:** The test adapts to your performance; the difficulty of the second module in each section is based on your performance in the first module.

Key Sections of the Digital SAT: Reading, Writing, Math

The adaptive, digital SAT introduced is structured around three core skill areas: Reading, Writing, and Math. Each of these sections is carefully designed to assess critical thinking, problem-solving abilities, and readiness for college-level work.

Reading and Writing Section

- **Total Questions:** 54

- **Time Allotted:** 64 minutes
- **Structure:** Divided into two modules, each lasting 32 minutes.
- **Content:** Each module contains 27 questions, focusing on reading comprehension, grammar, and language conventions.

Reading Section

The Reading section evaluates your ability to comprehend, analyze, and interpret written material. It includes:

1. Passages from literature, historical documents, natural sciences, and social sciences.
2. Questions targeting main ideas, textual evidence, inference-making, and vocabulary usage in context.

Writing Section

The Writing section measures your command of grammar, syntax, clarity, and style. It includes:

1. Questions focused on correcting grammatical errors, improving sentence structure, and enhancing coherence and conciseness.
2. Context-based tasks requiring revision and editing skills to strengthen the overall impact of written passages.

Math Section

- **Total Questions:** 44
- **Time Allotted:** 70 minutes
- **Structure:** Divided into two modules, each lasting 35 minutes.

The Math section assesses algebraic proficiency, problem-solving skills, data analysis capability, and understanding of advanced math concepts. It features:

1. Algebra questions emphasizing equations, inequalities, and linear relationships.
2. Problem-solving tasks requiring practical application of math concepts to real-world scenarios.
3. Data interpretation problems involving charts, graphs, and statistical analysis.
4. Advanced math items covering geometry, trigonometry, and complex algebra.

The Adaptive, Digital SAT: Structure and Scoring Breakdown

The SAT has evolved significantly with the introduction of the adaptive, digital format, enhancing its relevance, accuracy, and efficiency. Understanding its updated structure and scoring is essential for effective preparation and achieving top scores.

Adaptive Digital Structure Explained

The adaptive SAT now dynamically adjusts the difficulty of questions based on your performance, providing a tailored testing experience. The exam consists of two primary sections:

- **Reading and Writing:** Integrated into a single adaptive section, focusing on comprehension, language use, and effective expression.
- **Math:** Divided into modules adapting individually, emphasizing algebra, problem-solving, data analysis, and advanced math topics.

Each section is composed of distinct modules, with the difficulty of the second module determined by your performance in the first. Performing well on initial questions leads to more challenging subsequent questions, while incorrect answers prompt slightly less difficult questions, precisely gauging your ability level.

The Digital Interface

The digital SAT is taken on a secure device provided by the testing center or approved personal equipment, ensuring accessibility and standardization.

Features of the digital testing experience include:

- Tools like highlighting, question flagging, and countdown timers.
- Integrated calculator functionality for the math section.
- Immediate movement between questions and modules within sections, without backward navigation between adaptive modules.

Scoring Breakdown

The adaptive SAT maintains the familiar scoring range of 400–1600, split evenly between the two main sections:

- **Reading and Writing:** Scores range from 200 to 800.
- **Math:** Scores range from 200 to 800.

Each correct answer contributes to your raw score, adjusted through the adaptive algorithm to generate a scaled score reflecting your precise skill level. Incorrect or unanswered questions do not deduct points, encouraging educated guesses when uncertain.

Benefits of Adaptive Testing

The shift to an adaptive format offers several benefits:

- **Accuracy:** More precise measurement of ability, providing clearer distinctions between skill levels.
- **Efficiency:** Shorter test duration without compromising reliability, reducing fatigue and improving performance.
- **Personalization:** Test difficulty tailored specifically to individual performance, improving student experience and motivation.

Preparing for the Adaptive Format

To excel in the adaptive SAT, students should:

- Familiarize themselves with the digital testing tools and interface beforehand.
- Engage consistently with adaptive practice tests to experience realistic testing scenarios.
- Build foundational skills thoroughly, as adaptive testing precisely identifies skill gaps.

Embracing the adaptive, digital SAT requires strategic understanding of its structure and scoring. With focused preparation tailored to the adaptive experience, students can confidently navigate this innovative testing format and achieve their highest potential scores.

PART 2 — SAT Math

SAT Math Prerequisites

Before diving into SAT-specific strategies and advanced problem-solving techniques, it's crucial to ensure you have a solid grasp of fundamental mathematical concepts. This chapter covers the essential prerequisites that form the backbone of SAT Math. These are the skills you should have mastered before beginning your SAT preparation in earnest.

Think of these prerequisites as the tools in your mathematical toolbox. Without them, even the most sophisticated SAT strategies won't help. With them, you'll be able to approach SAT problems with confidence and efficiency.

Number Sense and Operations

The Number System

Understanding different types of numbers is fundamental to all mathematics:

Natural Numbers: 1, 2, 3, 4, ... (counting numbers)

Whole Numbers: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, ... (natural numbers plus zero)

Integers: ..., -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, ... (whole numbers and their negatives)

Rational Numbers: Numbers that can be expressed as fractions (a/b where $b \neq 0$)

- Examples: $1/2$, $-3/4$, 5 (which equals $5/1$), 0.75 (which equals $3/4$)

Irrational Numbers: Numbers that cannot be expressed as fractions

- Examples: π , $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt{3}$, e

Real Numbers: All rational and irrational numbers combined

Order of Operations (PEMDAS)

The correct order for evaluating expressions:

1. **P**arentheses (including brackets and braces)
2. **E**xponents (including roots)
3. **M**ultiplication and **D**ivision (left to right)
4. **A**ddition and **S**ubtraction (left to right)

Example: Evaluate $3 + 4 \times 2^2 - (8 - 3)$

Solution:

- First parentheses: $3 + 4 \times 2^2 - 5$

- Then exponents: $3 + 4 \times 4 - 5$
- Then multiplication: $3 + 16 - 5$
- Finally, left to right: $19 - 5 = 14$

Properties of Operations

These properties allow you to manipulate expressions efficiently:

Commutative Property:

- Addition: $a + b = b + a$
- Multiplication: $a \times b = b \times a$

Associative Property:

- Addition: $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$
- Multiplication: $(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$

Distributive Property:

- $a(b + c) = ab + ac$
- $a(b - c) = ab - ac$

Identity Properties:

- Addition: $a + 0 = a$
- Multiplication: $a \times 1 = a$

Inverse Properties:

- Addition: $a + (-a) = 0$
- Multiplication: $a \times (1/a) = 1$ (where $a \neq 0$)

Working with Fractions

Basic Fraction Operations

Adding and Subtracting Fractions:

Same denominators: Add/subtract numerators, keep denominator

- $\frac{3}{7} + \frac{2}{7} = \frac{5}{7}$
- $\frac{5}{8} - \frac{3}{8} = \frac{2}{8} = \frac{1}{4}$

Different denominators: Find common denominator first

- $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{4}{12} + \frac{3}{12} = \frac{7}{12}$

Multiplying Fractions:

- Multiply numerators and denominators: $(\frac{a}{b}) \times (\frac{c}{d}) = \frac{ac}{bd}$
- Example: $\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{3}{5} = \frac{6}{15} = \frac{2}{5}$

Dividing Fractions:

- Multiply by the reciprocal: $(\frac{a}{b}) \div (\frac{c}{d}) = (\frac{a}{b}) \times (\frac{d}{c})$
- Example: $\frac{2}{3} \div \frac{4}{5} = \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{5}{4} = \frac{10}{12} = \frac{5}{6}$

Mixed Numbers and Improper Fractions

Converting mixed to improper:

- $2\frac{3}{4} = \frac{(2 \times 4 + 3)}{4} = \frac{11}{4}$

Converting improper to mixed:

- $\frac{17}{5} = 3\frac{2}{5}$ (since $17 \div 5 = 3$ remainder 2)

Simplifying Fractions

Always reduce fractions to lowest terms by dividing both numerator and denominator by their greatest common factor (GCF).

Example: $24/36 = 24 \div 12 / 36 \div 12 = 2/3$

Decimals and Percentages

Decimal Operations

Place Value: Understanding that each position represents a power of 10

- $345.678 = 3 \times 10^2 + 4 \times 10^1 + 5 \times 10^0 + 6 \times 10^{-1} + 7 \times 10^{-2} + 8 \times 10^{-3}$

Adding/Subtracting: Line up decimal points

$$\begin{array}{r} 23.45 \\ + 18.7 \\ \hline \\ 42.15 \end{array}$$

Multiplying: Multiply as whole numbers, then place decimal point

- $2.3 \times 1.5 = 23 \times 15 = 345$, with 2 decimal places total = 3.45

Dividing: Move decimal point in divisor to make it a whole number, move decimal in dividend the same number of places

Converting Between Fractions, Decimals, and Percentages

Fraction to Decimal: Divide numerator by denominator

- $3/4 = 3 \div 4 = 0.75$

Decimal to Percentage: Multiply by 100

- $0.75 \times 100 = 75\%$

Percentage to Decimal: Divide by 100

- $45\% = 45 \div 100 = 0.45$

Common Conversions to Memorize:

- $1/2 = 0.5 = 50\%$
- $1/4 = 0.25 = 25\%$
- $1/3 \approx 0.333... = 33\frac{1}{3}\%$
- $1/5 = 0.2 = 20\%$
- $1/8 = 0.125 = 12.5\%$

Percentage Calculations

Finding a percentage of a number:

- $15\% \text{ of } 80 = 0.15 \times 80 = 12$

Finding what percentage one number is of another:

- What percentage is 20 of 80? $\rightarrow (20/80) \times 100 = 25\%$

Finding the whole when given a part and percentage:

- 15 is 20% of what number? $\rightarrow 15 = 0.20 \times n \rightarrow n = 75$

Integer Operations and Number Properties

Operations with Negative Numbers

Addition:

- Same signs: Add and keep the sign

- Different signs: Subtract and use sign of larger absolute value

Subtraction:

- Convert to addition: $a - b = a + (-b)$
- Example: $5 - (-3) = 5 + 3 = 8$

Multiplication and Division:

- Same signs \rightarrow Positive result
- Different signs \rightarrow Negative result
- $(-3) \times (-4) = 12$
- $(-15) \div 3 = -5$

Absolute Value

The absolute value $|x|$ is the distance from zero on the number line:

- $|5| = 5$
- $|-5| = 5$
- $|0| = 0$

Key property: $|x| = x$ if $x \geq 0$, and $|x| = -x$ if $x < 0$

Factors and Multiples

Factors: Numbers that divide evenly into a given number

- Factors of 12: 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12

Prime Numbers: Numbers with exactly two factors (1 and itself)

- First ten primes: 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29

Prime Factorization: Expressing a number as a product of primes

- $60 = 2^2 \times 3 \times 5$

Greatest Common Factor (GCF): Largest factor shared by two numbers

- $\text{GCF}(24, 36) = 12$

Least Common Multiple (LCM): Smallest positive multiple shared by two numbers

- $\text{LCM}(6, 8) = 24$

Divisibility Rules

Quick tests to determine if a number is divisible by:

- **2:** Last digit is even
- **3:** Sum of digits is divisible by 3
- **4:** Last two digits form a number divisible by 4
- **5:** Last digit is 0 or 5
- **6:** Divisible by both 2 and 3
- **9:** Sum of digits is divisible by 9
- **10:** Last digit is 0

Powers and Roots

Exponent Rules

Product Rule: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$

- Example: $x^3 \times x^4 = x^7$

Quotient Rule: $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$

- Example: $x^5 \div x^2 = x^3$

Power Rule: $(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$

- Example: $(x^2)^3 = x^6$

Product to a Power: $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$

- Example: $(2x)^3 = 8x^3$

Quotient to a Power: $(a/b)^n = a^n/b^n$

- Example: $(x/2)^3 = x^3/8$

Zero Exponent: $a^0 = 1$ (where $a \neq 0$)

Negative Exponent: $a^{-n} = 1/a^n$

- Example: $2^{-3} = 1/8$

Square Roots and Cube Roots

Perfect Squares to Memorize:

- $1^2 = 1, 2^2 = 4, 3^2 = 9, 4^2 = 16, 5^2 = 25$
- $6^2 = 36, 7^2 = 49, 8^2 = 64, 9^2 = 81, 10^2 = 100$
- $11^2 = 121, 12^2 = 144, 13^2 = 169, 14^2 = 196, 15^2 = 225$

Square Root Properties:

- $\sqrt{ab} = \sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b}$
- $\sqrt{a/b} = \sqrt{a} / \sqrt{b}$
- $(\sqrt{a})^2 = a$ (for $a \geq 0$)

Simplifying Square Roots:

- $\sqrt{72} = \sqrt{(36 \times 2)} = 6\sqrt{2}$

Cube Roots:

- $\sqrt[3]{8} = 2$ (since $2^3 = 8$)
- $\sqrt[3]{(-27)} = -3$ (since $(-3)^3 = -27$)

Basic Algebraic Concepts

Variables and Expressions

Variable: A letter that represents an unknown value

Algebraic Expression: A combination of variables, numbers, and operations

- Examples: $3x + 5$, $2x^2 - 7x + 1$, $(x + 3)/2$

Terms: Parts of an expression separated by + or - signs

- In $3x^2 - 5x + 7$: the terms are $3x^2$, $-5x$, and 7

Coefficients: Numbers multiplied by variables

- In $3x^2$, the coefficient is 3

Like Terms: Terms with the same variable(s) raised to the same power(s)

- $3x$ and $-5x$ are like terms
- $2x^2$ and $3x$ are NOT like terms

Combining Like Terms

Simplify by adding/subtracting coefficients of like terms:

- $3x + 5x - 2x = 6x$
- $2x^2 + 3x - x^2 + 4x = x^2 + 7x$

Evaluating Expressions

Substitute given values for variables and calculate:

Example: Evaluate $3x^2 - 2x + 5$ when $x = -2$

- $3(-2)^2 - 2(-2) + 5$
- $3(4) + 4 + 5$
- $12 + 4 + 5 = 21$

The Distributive Property in Algebra

Crucial for expanding and simplifying:

- $3(x + 4) = 3x + 12$
- $-2(x - 5) = -2x + 10$
- $x(x + 3) = x^2 + 3x$

Basic Equation Solving

One-Step Equations

Use inverse operations to isolate the variable:

- $x + 5 = 12 \rightarrow x = 7$
- $x - 3 = 8 \rightarrow x = 11$
- $3x = 15 \rightarrow x = 5$
- $x/4 = 3 \rightarrow x = 12$

Two-Step Equations

Reverse order of operations:

- $2x + 5 = 13$
- $2x = 8$ (subtract 5)
- $x = 4$ (divide by 2)

Multi-Step Equations

Combine like terms and use distributive property:

- $3(x - 2) + 4 = 2x + 7$
- $3x - 6 + 4 = 2x + 7$
- $3x - 2 = 2x + 7$
- $x = 9$

Checking Solutions

Always verify by substituting back into the original equation.

Essential Geometry Concepts

Angle Relationships

Types of Angles:

- Acute: Less than 90°
- Right: Exactly 90°
- Obtuse: Between 90° and 180°
- Straight: Exactly 180°

Angle Pairs:

- Complementary: Sum to 90°

- Supplementary: Sum to 180°
- Vertical angles: Opposite angles formed by intersecting lines (always equal)

Basic Shapes and Properties

Triangles:

- Sum of angles = 180°
- Types: Equilateral (all sides equal), Isosceles (two sides equal), Scalene (no sides equal)

Quadrilaterals:

- Rectangle: All angles 90° , opposite sides equal
- Square: All sides equal, all angles 90°
- Parallelogram: Opposite sides parallel and equal
- Trapezoid: One pair of parallel sides

Circles:

- Radius: Distance from center to edge
- Diameter: Distance across through center ($= 2 \times \text{radius}$)
- Circumference: Distance around ($= 2\pi r = \pi d$)

Perimeter and Area

Perimeter: Distance around a shape

- Rectangle: $P = 2l + 2w$
- Square: $P = 4s$
- Triangle: $P = a + b + c$

Area: Space inside a shape

- Rectangle: $A = \text{length} \times \text{width}$
- Square: $A = \text{side}^2$
- Triangle: $A = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$
- Circle: $A = \pi r^2$

The Coordinate Plane

Plotting Points

Points are written as ordered pairs (x, y):

- x-coordinate: Horizontal position (positive = right, negative = left)
- y-coordinate: Vertical position (positive = up, negative = down)

Quadrants

The plane is divided into four quadrants:

- Quadrant I: (+, +)
- Quadrant II: (-, +)
- Quadrant III: (-, -)
- Quadrant IV: (+, -)

Basic Graphing

Horizontal lines: $y = \text{constant}$ (slope = 0) **Vertical lines:** $x = \text{constant}$ (undefined slope)

Ratios and Proportions

Writing Ratios

Ratios compare quantities and can be written as:

- 3 to 4
- 3:4
- $\frac{3}{4}$

Simplifying Ratios

Like fractions, reduce to simplest form:

- $6:8 = 3:4$
- $15:25 = 3:5$

Solving Proportions

If two ratios are equal, cross-multiply:

- $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{x}{12}$
- $4x = 36$
- $x = 9$

Study Skills and Calculator Proficiency

Mental Math Strategies

Multiplication Tricks:

- $\times 5$: Multiply by 10 and divide by 2
- $\times 9$: Multiply by 10 and subtract original number

- $\times 11$: For two-digit numbers, add digits and place sum in middle

Estimation:

- Round to convenient numbers
- Use benchmarks (25%, 50%, 75%)
- Check reasonableness of answers

Calculator Skills**Essential Functions:**

- Order of operations (use parentheses)
- Exponents and roots
- Fraction/decimal conversion
- Memory functions

Common Mistakes to Avoid:

- Forgetting parentheses in complex expressions
- Not clearing previous calculations
- Rounding too early in multi-step problems

Self-Assessment Checklist

Before moving on to SAT-specific content, ensure you can:

- ☐ Perform operations with fractions, decimals, and percentages without a calculator
- ☐ Apply order of operations correctly every time
- ☐ Simplify algebraic expressions by combining like terms

- Solve multi-step linear equations
- Work confidently with negative numbers
- Apply exponent rules
- Find factors, multiples, GCF, and LCM
- Convert between fractions, decimals, and percentages
- Calculate perimeter and area of basic shapes
- Plot points and identify coordinates
- Set up and solve proportions
- Evaluate algebraic expressions for given values

Common Gaps and How to Address Them

If You Struggle with Fractions

- Practice with visual models (pie charts, bar models)
- Master one operation at a time
- Use real-world contexts (recipes, measurements)

If You Struggle with Negative Numbers

- Use a number line for visualization
- Think of negative numbers as debts or temperatures below zero
- Practice with real contexts (bank accounts, elevations)

If You Struggle with Algebraic Thinking

- Start with numerical patterns before introducing variables

- Use concrete examples before generalizing
- Practice translating word phrases to algebraic expressions

Conclusion

These prerequisites form the foundation upon which all SAT math is built. If any of these concepts feel shaky, it's worth spending extra time strengthening them before diving into SAT-specific preparation. Remember, the SAT doesn't test these concepts in isolation—it combines them in complex ways. The stronger your foundation, the more confidently you'll be able to tackle challenging SAT problems.

Consider this chapter your diagnostic tool. Areas where you struggled indicate where you should focus your preliminary study. Master these basics, and you'll find that even the most intimidating SAT problems become manageable when broken down into their fundamental components.

SAT Algebra

Linear Equations and Graphs

Linear equations form the foundation of SAT algebra, appearing in roughly 35% of all math questions. This chapter will equip you with the skills to solve linear equations efficiently, translate word problems into mathematical expressions, and interpret linear graphs with confidence. On the SAT, these concepts rarely appear in isolation—you'll often need to combine equation-solving with graph interpretation or apply these skills to real-world scenarios.

The beauty of linear relationships lies in their predictability: constant rates of change that create straight-line patterns. Whether you're calculating the cost of a cell phone plan, predicting population growth, or analyzing scientific data, linear equations provide the tools to model and solve these problems.

Part I: Solving Linear Equations

One-Variable Linear Equations

A linear equation in one variable has the form $ax + b = c$, where a , b , and c are constants and x is the variable. The goal is always to isolate x .

Basic Solving Strategies

Strategy 1: Inverse Operations

Work backwards through the order of operations to isolate the variable.

Example 1.1: Solve $3x - 7 = 14$

Solution:

1. $3x - 7 = 14$
2. $3x = 21$ (add 7 to both sides)
3. $x = 7$ (divide both sides by 3)

Strategy 2: Combining Like Terms First

When variables appear on both sides, collect them on one side first.

Example 1.2: Solve $5x + 3 = 2x + 15$

Solution:

1. $5x + 3 = 2x + 15$
2. $3x + 3 = 15$ (subtract $2x$ from both sides)
3. $3x = 12$ (subtract 3 from both sides)
4. $x = 4$ (divide both sides by 3)

Equations with Fractions

When dealing with fractions, you can either work with them directly or clear them by multiplying by the least common denominator (LCD).

Example 1.3: Solve $(x/3) + (x/4) = 7$

Method 1 - Clear fractions:

1. LCD = 12
2. $12[(x/3) + (x/4)] = 12(7)$
3. $4x + 3x = 84$
4. $7x = 84$
5. $x = 12$

Method 2 - Work with fractions:

1. $(x/3) + (x/4) = 7$
2. $(4x + 3x)/12 = 7$
3. $7x/12 = 7$
4. $x = 12$

Equations with Parentheses

Always distribute first, then combine like terms.

Example 1.4: Solve $2(3x - 4) - 3(x - 5) = 10$

Solution:

1. $6x - 8 - 3x + 15 = 10$
2. $3x + 7 = 10$
3. $3x = 3$
4. $x = 1$

Special Cases in Linear Equations

No Solution (Contradiction)

When simplifying leads to a false statement, the equation has no solution.

Example 1.5: Solve $2x + 5 = 2x + 8$

Solution:

1. $2x + 5 = 2x + 8$
2. $5 = 8$ (subtract $2x$ from both sides)
3. This is false, so there is no solution

Infinite Solutions (Identity)

When simplifying leads to a true statement with no variables, every value of x is a solution.

Example 1.6: Solve $3(x + 2) = 3x + 6$

Solution:

1. $3x + 6 = 3x + 6$
2. $6 = 6$ (subtract $3x$ from both sides)
3. This is always true, so x can be any real number

Systems of Linear Equations

The SAT frequently tests systems of two linear equations with two variables. There are three main solving methods:

Method 1: Substitution

Best when one equation is already solved for a variable or can be easily solved.

Example 1.7: Solve the system:

1. $y = 2x + 3$

2. $3x + y = 13$

Solution:

1. Substitute the first equation into the second:

2. $3x + (2x + 3) = 13$

3. $5x + 3 = 13$

4. $5x = 10$

5. $x = 2$

6. Therefore: $y = 2(2) + 3 = 7$

Method 2: Elimination

Best when coefficients are opposites or can be made opposites easily.

Example 1.8: Solve the system:

1. $2x + 3y = 13$

2. $4x - 3y = -1$

Solution:

1. Add the equations to eliminate y :

2. $6x = 12$

3. $x = 2$

4. Substitute back: $2(2) + 3y = 13$

5. $4 + 3y = 13$

6. $3y = 9$

7. $y = 3$

Method 3: Graphical Interpretation

Understanding that the solution is the intersection point of two lines.

SAT-Specific Equation Types

Literal Equations

Solving for one variable in terms of others—common in formula rearrangement questions.

Example 1.9: The formula for temperature conversion is $F = (9/5)C + 32$. Solve for C.

Solution:

1. $F = (9/5)C + 32$
2. $F - 32 = (9/5)C$
3. $C = (5/9)(F - 32)$

Equations with Absolute Value

Remember that $|x| = a$ means $x = a$ or $x = -a$ (when $a > 0$).

Example 1.10: Solve $|2x - 3| = 7$

Solution:

1. Case 1: $2x - 3 = 7 \rightarrow x = 5$
2. Case 2: $2x - 3 = -7 \rightarrow x = -2$
3. Solutions: $x = 5$ or $x = -2$

Part II: Word Problems

Word problems test your ability to translate real-world situations into mathematical equations. The SAT emphasizes practical applications that you might encounter in college or careers.

The Translation Process

Step 1: Identify the Unknown

What are you solving for? Assign a variable.

Step 2: Find Relationships

Look for keywords that indicate mathematical operations:

1. "is" or "equals" $\rightarrow =$
2. "more than" or "increased by" $\rightarrow +$
3. "less than" or "decreased by" $\rightarrow -$
4. "of" or "times" $\rightarrow \times$
5. "per" or "for each" $\rightarrow \div$ or rate

Step 3: Write the Equation

Translate the relationship into mathematical symbols.

Step 4: Solve and Verify

Solve the equation and check if your answer makes sense in context.

Common Word Problem Types

Distance/Rate/Time Problems

The fundamental relationship: Distance = Rate \times Time ($d = rt$)

Example 2.1: Two trains leave a station at the same time traveling in opposite directions. One travels at 60 mph and the other at 80 mph. How long until they are 350 miles apart?

Solution:

1. Let t = time in hours
2. Distance of first train: $60t$
3. Distance of second train: $80t$
4. Total distance apart: $60t + 80t = 350$
5. $140t = 350$
6. $t = 2.5$ hours

Work Rate Problems

The key principle: If someone can complete a job in t hours, their rate is $1/t$ jobs per hour.

Example 2.2: Maria can paint a room in 6 hours. José can paint the same room in 4 hours. How long will it take them working together?

Solution:

1. Maria's rate: $1/6$ room per hour
2. José's rate: $1/4$ room per hour
3. Combined rate: $1/6 + 1/4 = 2/12 + 3/12 = 5/12$ room per hour
4. Time = $1 \text{ room} \div (5/12 \text{ rooms/hour}) = 12/5 = 2.4$ hours

Mixture Problems

These involve combining quantities with different values or concentrations.

Example 2.3: A chemist has 20 liters of a 30% acid solution. How many liters of a 60% acid solution must be added to create a 45% acid solution?

Solution:

1. Let x = liters of 60% solution to add
2. Acid from 30% solution: $0.30(20) = 6$ liters
3. Acid from 60% solution: $0.60x$ liters
4. Total acid: $6 + 0.60x$
5. Total solution: $20 + x$
6. Set up equation: $(6 + 0.60x)/(20 + x) = 0.45$
7. $6 + 0.60x = 0.45(20 + x)$
8. $6 + 0.60x = 9 + 0.45x$
9. $0.15x = 3$
10. $x = 20$ liters

Investment/Interest Problems

Simple interest formula: $I = Prt$ (Interest = Principal \times rate \times time)

Example 2.4: An investor puts some money in a savings account earning 3% annual interest and \$2,000 more than that amount in bonds earning 5% annual interest. If the total annual interest is \$280, how much was invested in bonds?

Solution:

1. Let x = amount in savings account
2. Amount in bonds = $x + 2,000$
3. Interest from savings: $0.03x$

4. Interest from bonds: $0.05(x + 2,000)$
5. Total interest: $0.03x + 0.05(x + 2,000) = 280$
6. $0.03x + 0.05x + 100 = 280$
7. $0.08x = 180$
8. $x = 2,250$
9. Amount in bonds = $2,250 + 2,000 = \$4,250$

Age Problems

Set up equations based on relationships between ages at different times.

Example 2.5: Sarah is 8 years older than her brother Tom. In 4 years, Sarah will be twice as old as Tom was 2 years ago. How old is Sarah now?

Solution:

1. Let t = Tom's current age
2. Sarah's current age = $t + 8$
3. In 4 years, Sarah will be: $(t + 8) + 4 = t + 12$
4. Tom was 2 years ago: $t - 2$
5. Equation: $t + 12 = 2(t - 2)$
6. $t + 12 = 2t - 4$
7. $16 = t$
8. Sarah's age = $16 + 8 = 24$ years old

Advanced Word Problem Strategies

Using Tables

For complex problems, organize information in a table.

Example 2.6: A parking garage charges \$5 for the first hour and \$3 for each additional hour. If Maya paid \$23, how long did she park?

| Hours | Cost Calculation |
|-------|-----------------------|
| 1 | \$5 |
| 2 | $\$5 + \$3 = \$8$ |
| 3 | $\$5 + 2(\$3) = \$11$ |
| n | $\$5 + (n-1)(\$3)$ |

Setting up the equation:

1. $5 + 3(n - 1) = 23$
2. $5 + 3n - 3 = 23$
3. $3n + 2 = 23$
4. $3n = 21$
5. $n = 7$ hours

Working Backwards

Sometimes it's easier to verify answer choices than solve directly.

Dimensional Analysis

Keep track of units to ensure your equation makes sense.

Part III: Linear Graphs

Understanding the Coordinate Plane

Every point on a linear graph represents a solution to the equation. The SAT tests your ability to:

1. Interpret graphs in context
2. Find key features (slope, intercepts)
3. Write equations from graphs
4. Understand transformations

Slope: The Rate of Change

Slope measures how steep a line is and represents the rate of change.

Calculating Slope

Given two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) :

$$m = (y_2 - y_1)/(x_2 - x_1)$$

Example 3.1: Find the slope of the line passing through $(-2, 3)$ and $(4, -1)$.

Solution:

1. $m = (-1 - 3)/(4 - (-2))$
2. $m = -4/6$
3. $m = -2/3$

Interpreting Slope in Context

1. **Positive slope:** As x increases, y increases (upward trend)
2. **Negative slope:** As x increases, y decreases (downward trend)

3. **Zero slope:** Horizontal line (no change in y)
4. **Undefined slope:** Vertical line (no change in x)

In word problems, slope often represents:

1. Rate of change
2. Speed
3. Cost per unit
4. Growth rate

Forms of Linear Equations

Slope-Intercept Form: $y = mx + b$

1. m = slope
2. b = y-intercept (where line crosses y-axis)

Example 3.2: A taxi charges a \$4 base fare plus \$2.50 per mile. Write an equation for the total cost.

Solution:

1. Let y = total cost, x = miles
2. $y = 2.50x + 4$
3. Slope (2.50) = cost per mile
4. y-intercept (4) = base fare

Point-Slope Form: $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$

Useful when you know the slope and one point.

Example 3.3: Write the equation of a line with slope -3 passing through (2, 5).

Solution:

1. $y - 5 = -3(x - 2)$
2. $y - 5 = -3x + 6$
3. $y = -3x + 11$

Standard Form: $Ax + By = C$

Often used in systems of equations, where A, B, and C are integers.

Finding Equations from Graphs

Method 1: Identify Slope and Y-intercept

1. Find y-intercept (where line crosses y-axis)
2. Use two clear points to calculate slope
3. Write in form $y = mx + b$

Method 2: Use Two Points

1. Calculate slope using the two points
2. Use point-slope form with either point
3. Convert to desired form

Example 3.4: Find the equation of the line passing through (0, -2) and (3, 4).

Solution:

1. Slope: $m = (4 - (-2))/(3 - 0) = 6/3 = 2$
2. Since (0, -2) is the y-intercept: $y = 2x - 2$

Parallel and Perpendicular Lines

Parallel Lines

1. Same slope, different y-intercepts
2. Never intersect

Example 3.5: Write the equation of a line parallel to $y = 3x - 5$ passing through $(2, 1)$.

Solution:

1. Parallel line has slope 3
2. Using point-slope: $y - 1 = 3(x - 2)$
3. $y = 3x - 5$

Perpendicular Lines

1. Slopes are negative reciprocals: $m_1 \times m_2 = -1$
2. Intersect at 90° angles

Example 3.6: Find the equation of a line perpendicular to $y = 2x + 3$ passing through $(4, -1)$.

Solution:

1. Original slope = 2
2. Perpendicular slope = $-1/2$
3. $y - (-1) = -1/2(x - 4)$
4. $y + 1 = -1/2x + 2$
5. $y = -1/2x + 1$

Interpreting Linear Graphs in Context

The SAT frequently presents linear graphs representing real-world situations. Key skills include:

Reading Values

1. Identify specific points
2. Estimate values between gridlines
3. Understand scale and units

Understanding Intercepts

1. **x-intercept:** Where $y = 0$ (often represents break-even point, time when quantity reaches zero)
2. **y-intercept:** Where $x = 0$ (often represents initial value, fixed cost, starting amount)

Example 3.7: A graph shows the amount of water in a tank over time, with time (hours) on the x-axis and volume (gallons) on the y-axis. The line passes through $(0, 500)$ and $(10, 0)$. What do these points represent?

Solution:

1. $(0, 500)$: Initially, the tank contains 500 gallons
2. $(10, 0)$: After 10 hours, the tank is empty
3. Slope = -50 gallons/hour (rate of drainage)

Comparing Multiple Lines

When multiple lines appear on the same graph:

1. Steeper lines indicate faster rates of change
2. Lines that start higher have greater initial values

3. Intersection points show when quantities are equal

Linear Inequalities and Shaded Regions

Graphing Linear Inequalities

1. Graph the boundary line (solid for \leq or \geq , dashed for $<$ or $>$)
2. Test a point to determine which side to shade
3. Shade the region that satisfies the inequality

Example 3.8: Graph $y > 2x - 3$

Solution:

1. Graph $y = 2x - 3$ with a dashed line
2. Test $(0, 0)$: $0 > 2(0) - 3 \rightarrow 0 > -3$ ✓
3. Shade above the line (including $(0, 0)$)

Systems of Inequalities

The solution is the region where all shaded areas overlap.

Common SAT Graph Questions

Type 1: Finding Equations

Given a graph, write the equation of the line.

Type 2: Interpreting Slope

What does the slope represent in the context of the problem?

Type 3: Predicting Values

Use the graph to predict values outside the shown range.

Type 4: Comparing Scenarios

Multiple lines represent different options or scenarios.

Example 3.9: Two cell phone plans are graphed with monthly cost on the y-axis and minutes used on the x-axis. Plan A: $y = 0.10x + 20$, Plan B: $y = 0.05x + 30$. For how many minutes do the plans cost the same?

Solution:

1. Set equations equal: $0.10x + 20 = 0.05x + 30$
2. $0.05x = 10$
3. $x = 200$ minutes

Practice Problems

Solving Equations

1. Solve for x: $4(2x - 3) - 3(x - 4) = 17$
2. Solve the system:
 - $3x - 2y = 8$
 - $x + 4y = -6$
3. Solve $|3x + 2| = 11$

Word Problems

4. A plumber charges \$75 for a house call plus \$45 per hour. If the total bill was \$255, how many hours did the plumber work?
5. Train A leaves the station traveling north at 70 mph. Two hours later, Train B leaves the same station traveling north at 90 mph. How long after Train B leaves will it catch up to Train A?

6. A store sells nuts for \$8 per pound and dried fruit for \$5 per pound. How many pounds of each should be mixed to make 30 pounds of trail mix that sells for \$6 per pound?

Linear Graphs

7. Find the equation of the line passing through $(-3, 7)$ and $(5, -1)$.
8. Write the equation of a line perpendicular to $y = -2/3x + 4$ that passes through $(6, 1)$.
9. A water tank is being filled at a constant rate. After 3 minutes, it contains 20 gallons. After 8 minutes, it contains 45 gallons. Write an equation for the amount of water W in terms of time t .
10. Two rental car companies charge as follows:
- Company A: \$30 per day plus \$0.20 per mile
 - Company B: \$40 per day plus \$0.15 per mile
11. For a one-day rental, after how many miles will Company B be cheaper?

Solutions

1. **$x = 5$**
- $8x - 12 - 3x + 12 = 17$
 - $5x = 17$
 - $x = 17/5 = 3.4$
2. **$x = 2, y = -2$**
- From equation 2: $x = -6 - 4y$
 - Substitute: $3(-6 - 4y) - 2y = 8$
 - $-18 - 12y - 2y = 8$

- $-14y = 26$
- $y = -2, x = 2$

3. **$x = 3$ or $x = -13/3$**

- Case 1: $3x + 2 = 11 \rightarrow x = 3$
- Case 2: $3x + 2 = -11 \rightarrow x = -13/3$

4. **4 hours**

- $75 + 45h = 255$
- $45h = 180$
- $h = 4$

5. **7 hours**

- When Train B catches up, they've traveled the same distance
- Train A's distance: $70(t + 2)$
- Train B's distance: $90t$
- $70(t + 2) = 90t$
- $70t + 140 = 90t$
- $140 = 20t$
- $t = 7$ hours

6. **10 pounds nuts, 20 pounds dried fruit**

- Let n = pounds of nuts, f = pounds of fruit
- $n + f = 30$
- $8n + 5f = 6(30) = 180$

- From first equation: $f = 30 - n$
- $8n + 5(30 - n) = 180$
- $8n + 150 - 5n = 180$
- $3n = 30$
- $n = 10, f = 20$

7. **$y = -x + 4$**

- Slope: $m = (-1 - 7)/(5 - (-3)) = -8/8 = -1$
- Using point-slope with (5, -1): $y + 1 = -1(x - 5)$
- $y = -x + 4$

8. **$y = 3/2x - 8$**

- Original slope: $-2/3$
- Perpendicular slope: $3/2$
- $y - 1 = 3/2(x - 6)$
- $y = 3/2x - 8$

9. **$W = 5t + 5$**

- Two points: (3, 20) and (8, 45)
- Slope: $(45 - 20)/(8 - 3) = 25/5 = 5$ gallons/minute
- Using point-slope: $W - 20 = 5(t - 3)$
- $W = 5t + 5$

10. **200 miles**

- Company A: $C = 30 + 0.20m$

- Company B: $C = 40 + 0.15m$
- Set $B < A$: $40 + 0.15m < 30 + 0.20m$
- $10 < 0.05m$
- $m > 200$ miles

Key Takeaways

1. **Equation Solving:** Always check your solution by substituting back into the original equation.
2. **Word Problems:** Draw diagrams, make tables, and define variables clearly. The hardest part is often the translation, not the math.
3. **Linear Graphs:** Remember that slope represents rate of change and has real-world meaning in context.
4. **Systems:** Choose the most efficient method based on the equation forms—substitution for equations already solved for a variable, elimination for convenient coefficients.
5. **Test Strategy:** On the SAT, you can often work backwards from answer choices or estimate from graphs rather than solving algebraically.

Mastering linear equations and graphs provides a foundation for more advanced topics. These concepts appear not just in algebra questions but throughout the SAT Math section, from interpreting scientific data to analyzing financial scenarios. Practice recognizing linear relationships in various contexts, and you'll be well-prepared for whatever the SAT presents.

Systems of Linear Equations

Systems of linear equations are a fundamental topic in SAT algebra, appearing in approximately 15-20% of the math questions on the digital SAT. This chapter will

equip you with the essential skills to solve these problems efficiently using two primary methods: substitution and elimination (combination).

The SAT emphasizes real-world applications of systems, so we'll focus on both abstract algebraic problems and word problems that model real situations.

Understanding Systems of Linear Equations

A system of linear equations consists of two or more linear equations with the same variables. On the SAT, you'll primarily work with systems of two equations in two variables, typically written as:

$$ax + by = c$$

$$dx + ey = f$$

The solution to a system is the ordered pair (x, y) that satisfies both equations simultaneously. Geometrically, this represents the point where two lines intersect.

Types of Solutions

Before diving into solving methods, it's crucial to understand the three possible outcomes when solving a system:

1. **One unique solution:** The lines intersect at exactly one point
2. **No solution:** The lines are parallel (same slope, different y-intercepts)
3. **Infinitely many solutions:** The lines are identical (same slope, same y-intercept)

The SAT frequently tests your ability to recognize these scenarios, especially in the harder questions.

Method 1: Substitution

The substitution method involves solving one equation for one variable and substituting that expression into the other equation. This method works particularly well when one variable has a coefficient of 1 or -1.

Step-by-Step Process

1. Solve one equation for one variable
2. Substitute the expression into the other equation
3. Solve the resulting equation for the remaining variable
4. Substitute back to find the other variable
5. Check your solution in both original equations

Example 1: Basic Substitution

Solve the system:

$$2x + y = 7$$

$$x - y = 2$$

Solution: From the second equation: $x = y + 2$

Substitute into the first equation: $2(y + 2) + y = 7$ $2y + 4 + y = 7$ $3y = 3$ $y = 1$

Substitute back: $x = 1 + 2 = 3$

Therefore, the solution is (3, 1).

Example 2: SAT Word Problem

A theater sells adult tickets for \$12 and student tickets for \$8. On Saturday, they sold 250 tickets and collected \$2,400. How many adult tickets were sold?

Solution: Let a = adult tickets and s = student tickets

System:

$$a + s = 250$$

$$12a + 8s = 2400$$

From the first equation: $s = 250 - a$

Substitute: $12a + 8(250 - a) = 2400$
 $12a + 2000 - 8a = 2400$
 $4a = 400$
 $a = 100$

Therefore, 100 adult tickets were sold.

When to Use Substitution

Substitution is most efficient when:

- One equation is already solved for a variable
- One variable has a coefficient of 1 or -1
- The problem explicitly asks for one specific variable

Method 2: Elimination (Combination)

The elimination method involves adding or subtracting equations to eliminate one variable. This method is often faster for systems where neither equation is easily solved for a variable.

Step-by-Step Process

1. Arrange equations in standard form ($ax + by = c$)
2. Multiply one or both equations to create opposite coefficients for one variable
3. Add or subtract the equations to eliminate that variable
4. Solve for the remaining variable
5. Substitute back to find the other variable
6. Check your solution

Example 3: Basic Elimination

Solve the system:

$$3x + 2y = 12$$

$$5x - 2y = 4$$

Solution: Notice that the y-coefficients are opposites. Add the equations:

$$3x + 2y = 12 \quad 5x - 2y = 4$$

$$8x = 16 \quad x = 2$$

Substitute $x = 2$ into the first equation: $3(2) + 2y = 12 \quad 6 + 2y = 12 \quad 2y = 6 \quad y = 3$

Therefore, the solution is $(2, 3)$.

Example 4: Elimination with Multiplication

Solve the system:

$$2x + 3y = 13$$

$$4x - y = 5$$

Solution: Multiply the second equation by 3 to eliminate y:

$$2x + 3y = 13 \quad 12x - 3y = 15 \quad (\text{second equation} \times 3)$$

$$14x = 28 \quad x = 2$$

Substitute back: $2(2) + 3y = 13 \quad 4 + 3y = 13 \quad 3y = 9 \quad y = 3$

Therefore, the solution is $(2, 3)$.

When to Use Elimination

Elimination is most efficient when:

- Coefficients of one variable are opposites or easily made opposites

- Both equations are in standard form
- Neither variable has a coefficient of 1

Advanced SAT Topics

Determining the Number of Solutions

The SAT often asks you to determine how many solutions a system has without actually solving it. Here's the key:

For the system:

$$ax + by = c$$

$$dx + ey = f$$

- **One solution:** $a/d \neq b/e$ (different slopes)
- **No solution:** $a/d = b/e \neq c/f$ (parallel lines)
- **Infinitely many solutions:** $a/d = b/e = c/f$ (same line)

Example 5: Number of Solutions

For what value of k does the system have no solution?

$$2x - 3y = 7$$

$$kx - 6y = 10$$

Solution: For no solution, we need parallel lines (same slope, different intercepts).

The slopes must be equal: $2/k = 3/6$ Cross-multiply: $2 \times 6 = 3k$ $12 = 3k$ $k = 4$

Verify: When $k = 4$, we have $2/4 = 3/6 = 1/2$, but $7/10 \neq 1/2$, confirming no solution.

Systems with Parameters

The SAT frequently includes systems where you need to find the value of a parameter (constant) given information about the solution.

Example 6: Finding a Parameter

If the system below has the solution $(3, -2)$, what is the value of k ?

$$2x + ky = 10$$

$$x - 3y = 9$$

Solution: Since $(3, -2)$ is the solution, substitute these values:

From the first equation: $2(3) + k(-2) = 10$ $6 - 2k = 10$ $-2k = 4$ $k = -2$

Verify with the second equation: $3 - 3(-2) = 3 + 6 = 9$ ✓

SAT Calculator Strategies

While you should be able to solve systems algebraically, the SAT calculator section allows efficient shortcuts:

Graphing Calculator Method

1. Rewrite equations in $y = mx + b$ form
2. Graph both equations
3. Use the intersection feature to find the solution

Matrix Method (for advanced calculators)

Many calculators can solve systems using matrices:

1. Enter coefficients in matrix form
2. Use the rref (reduced row echelon form) function

3. Read the solution directly

Common SAT Pitfalls and How to Avoid Them

Pitfall 1: Arithmetic Errors

Always check your solution by substituting back into both original equations. This catches most computational mistakes.

Pitfall 2: Misreading Word Problems

Carefully identify what the question asks for. Sometimes it wants a specific variable, sometimes the sum or difference of variables.

Pitfall 3: Forgetting to Check Reasonableness

In word problems, ensure your answer makes sense in context. Negative quantities for items sold or fractional people indicate errors.

Pitfall 4: Inefficient Method Choice

Practice recognizing which method is faster for each system type. This saves crucial time on the SAT.

Practice Problems

Problem Set A: Substitution Method

1. Solve: $x + 2y = 11$, $3x - y = 12$
2. A parking garage charges \$5 for cars and \$10 for trucks. Yesterday, 60 vehicles paid a total of \$400. How many cars were there?
3. If $2x - y = 7$ and $x = 3y + 1$, find the value of $x + y$.

Problem Set B: Elimination Method

4. Solve: $4x + 3y = 25$, $2x + 3y = 15$

5. Solve: $5x - 2y = 11$, $3x + 2y = 13$
6. If $6x + ky = 18$ and $3x - 4y = 9$ represent the same line, what is k ?

Problem Set C: Mixed Practice

7. For what value of a does the system $ax + 3y = 12$, $2x + y = 4$ have infinitely many solutions?
8. A chemist needs to create 100 mL of a 30% acid solution using 20% and 50% acid solutions. How many mL of the 50% solution should be used?
9. If the system $px + 2y = 8$, $3x + qy = 12$ has the solution $(2, 2)$, find $p + q$.
10. Determine the number of solutions: $4x - 6y = 10$, $-6x + 9y = -15$

Answer Key and Explanations

1. $(5, 3)$ - Substitute $x = 11 - 2y$ into the second equation
2. 40 cars - Let c = cars, t = trucks. Solve: $c + t = 60$, $5c + 10t = 400$
3. 6 - Substitute $x = 3y + 1$ into first equation to get $y = 1$, then $x = 4$
4. $(5, 5/3)$ - Subtract second from first to get $2x = 10$
5. $(3, 2)$ - Add equations to eliminate y
6. $k = -8$ - For same line, ratios must be equal: $6/3 = k/(-4) = 18/9$
7. $a = 6$ - Need $6/2 = 3/1 = 12/4$
8. 33.33 mL - Let x = mL of 50% solution. Solve: $0.5x + 0.2(100-x) = 30$
9. 5 - Substitute $(2, 2)$ to get $p = 2$ and $q = 3$
10. Infinitely many - Ratios are equal: $4/(-6) = (-6)/9 = 10/(-15) = -2/3$

Key Takeaways

1. **Master both methods:** Different problems favor different approaches
2. **Check your work:** Substitution back into original equations catches errors
3. **Recognize patterns:** Identify system types quickly to choose the best method
4. **Practice word problems:** The SAT emphasizes real-world applications
5. **Understand special cases:** Know how to identify systems with no solution or infinitely many solutions
6. **Time management:** Aim to solve standard systems in under 2 minutes

Remember, systems of equations on the SAT are not just about finding x and y —they're about modeling real situations and understanding relationships between variables. With consistent practice using these methods, you'll be able to tackle any system the SAT presents with confidence and efficiency.

Inequalities

Inequalities are a fundamental concept in SAT algebra, appearing in approximately 15-20% of the math questions on the SAT. Unlike equations that show equality between two expressions, inequalities demonstrate relationships where one side is greater than, less than, greater than or equal to, or less than or equal to the other side. This chapter will equip you with the skills needed to solve linear inequalities, work with systems of inequalities, and model real-world situations using inequality relationships.

The SAT emphasizes practical applications of inequalities, particularly in context-based problems that require you to interpret constraints, limitations, and ranges in real-world scenarios. You'll encounter these concepts in both the multiple-choice and student-produced response sections of the Math Test.

Linear Inequalities

Before diving into solving inequalities, let's review the four inequality symbols you'll encounter on the SAT:

1. $>$ (greater than): The left side is larger than the right side
2. $<$ (less than): The left side is smaller than the right side
3. \geq (greater than or equal to): The left side is larger than or equal to the right side
4. \leq (less than or equal to): The left side is smaller than or equal to the right side

Properties of Inequalities

Working with inequalities follows many of the same rules as working with equations, with one crucial exception:

The Golden Rule of Inequalities: When you multiply or divide **both** sides of an inequality by a **negative**, reverse the direction of the inequality symbol.

Let's see this in action:

Example 1: Solve $-3x + 7 > 16$

Solution:

$$-3x + 7 > 16$$

$$-3x > 9 \quad (\text{Subtract 7 from both sides})$$

$$x < -3 \quad (\text{Divide by -3 and reverse the inequality})$$

Notice how the $>$ symbol became $<$ when we divided by -3.

Solving Linear Inequalities Step-by-Step

The process for solving linear inequalities mirrors that of solving linear equations:

1. Simplify both sides by combining like terms
2. Isolate the variable term on one side
3. Isolate the variable by dividing or multiplying
4. Remember to flip the inequality sign when multiplying or dividing by a negative number

Example 2: Solve $4(2x - 3) \leq 5x + 9$

Solution:

$$4(2x - 3) \leq 5x + 9$$

$$8x - 12 \leq 5x + 9 \quad (\text{Distribute the 4})$$

$$8x - 5x \leq 9 + 12 \quad (\text{Collect like terms})$$

$$3x \leq 21 \quad (\text{Simplify})$$

$$x \leq 7 \quad (\text{Divide by 3})$$

Representing Solutions

On the SAT, you may need to represent inequality solutions in various ways:

1. **Algebraic notation:** $x > 5$
2. **Interval notation:** $(5, \infty)$
3. **Number line:** An open circle at 5 with an arrow extending to the right
4. **Set notation:** $\{x \mid x > 5\}$

For the SAT, focus primarily on algebraic notation and understanding what the solution means in context.

Compound Inequalities

The SAT frequently tests compound inequalities, which involve two inequality statements connected by "and" or "or."

"And" Compound Inequalities (Intersection): Both conditions must be true

Example: $-3 < 2x + 1 < 7$

To solve:

$$-3 < 2x + 1 < 7$$

$$-4 < 2x < 6 \quad (\text{Subtract 1 from all parts})$$

$$-2 < x < 3 \quad (\text{Divide all parts by 2})$$

"Or" Compound Inequalities (Union): At least one condition must be true

Example: $x - 4 < -2$ or $x + 3 > 8$

Solve each inequality separately:

$$x - 4 < -2 \quad \text{or} \quad x + 3 > 8$$

$$x < 2 \quad \text{or} \quad x > 5$$

Practice Problems - Linear Inequalities

1. Solve: $-2(x - 5) \geq 3x - 15$
2. Solve: $4 - 3x/2 < 7$
3. Solve the compound inequality: $-6 \leq 3x + 9 < 18$
4. If $2x - 7 > 5$, what is the smallest integer value of x ?

Systems of Inequalities

Systems of inequalities involve two or more inequalities that must be satisfied simultaneously. On the SAT, these often appear in word problems or coordinate plane questions.

Solving Systems Algebraically

When solving a system of inequalities algebraically, you're looking for all values that satisfy every inequality in the system.

Example 3: Solve the system:

$$2x + y > 4$$

$$x - y \leq 2$$

While we can't find a single point solution like with systems of equations, we can determine the region of solutions. For SAT purposes, you'll often be asked about specific points or conditions.

Graphing Systems of Inequalities

Graphing is often the most efficient method for visualizing systems of inequalities on the SAT:

1. Graph each inequality as if it were an equation (creating boundary lines)
2. Use solid lines for \leq or \geq , and dashed lines for $<$ or $>$
3. Shade the appropriate region for each inequality
4. The solution is where all shaded regions overlap

Key Testing Points: The SAT often asks you to identify which points satisfy a system. Test points by substituting their coordinates into each inequality.

Example 4: Does the point (3, 2) satisfy the system from Example 3?

Test in $2x + y > 4$: $2(3) + 2 = 8 > 4$ ✓

Test in $x - y \leq 2$: $3 - 2 = 1 \leq 2$ ✓

Yes, (3, 2) satisfies both inequalities.

Special Cases in Systems

Be prepared for these special scenarios on the SAT:

1. **No solution:** The shaded regions don't overlap
2. **Unbounded solution:** The solution region extends infinitely
3. **Boundary considerations:** Points on dashed lines are not included in the solution

Modeling Real-Life Situations with Inequalities

The SAT heavily emphasizes applying mathematical concepts to real-world scenarios. Inequalities are particularly useful for modeling constraints, budgets, capacities, and requirements.

Translating Words to Inequalities

Key phrases and their inequality translations:

1. "at least" $\rightarrow \geq$
2. "at most" $\rightarrow \leq$
3. "more than" $\rightarrow >$
4. "less than" $\rightarrow <$
5. "no more than" $\rightarrow \leq$
6. "no less than" $\rightarrow \geq$
7. "between" \rightarrow compound inequality with "and"

Budget and Resource Constraints

Example 5: A school is planning a field trip. The bus costs \$300 to rent, and admission tickets cost \$15 per student. If the school has budgeted at most \$750 for the trip, how many students can attend?

Let x = number of students

Set up the inequality: $300 + 15x \leq 750$

Solve:

$$15x \leq 450$$

$$x \leq 30$$

Therefore, at most 30 students can attend.

Production and Manufacturing Problems

Example 6: A factory produces two types of widgets: Type A and Type B. Each Type A widget requires 2 hours of machine time and 3 hours of labor. Each Type B widget requires 3 hours of machine time and 2 hours of labor. The factory has at most 100 hours of machine time and at most 90 hours of labor available per week.

Let a = number of Type A widgets and b = number of Type B widgets

System of inequalities:

$$2a + 3b \leq 100 \quad (\text{machine time constraint})$$

$$3a + 2b \leq 90 \quad (\text{labor constraint})$$

$$a \geq 0 \quad (\text{non-negative production})$$

$$b \geq 0 \quad (\text{non-negative production})$$

Mixture and Concentration Problems

Example 7: A chemist needs to create at least 500 mL of a solution that is at least 30% acid. She has a 20% acid solution and a 50% acid solution. If x represents the amount of 20% solution and y represents the amount of 50% solution, write a system of inequalities to model this situation.

Total volume: $x + y \geq 500$ Acid concentration: $0.20x + 0.50y \geq 0.30(x + y)$

Simplifying the concentration inequality:

$$0.20x + 0.50y \geq 0.30x + 0.30y$$

$$0.20y \geq 0.10x$$

$$y \geq 0.5x$$

System:

$$x + y \geq 500$$

$$y \geq 0.5x$$

$$x \geq 0$$

$$y \geq 0$$

Common SAT Problem Types

1. **Profit Maximization:** Setting up inequalities for resource constraints while maximizing profit
2. **Time Management:** Balancing multiple activities within time limits
3. **Distance/Speed/Time:** Using inequalities to model minimum or maximum travel requirements
4. **Geometric Constraints:** Area, perimeter, or volume limitations

Practice Problems - Modeling with Inequalities

1. A parking garage charges \$5 for the first hour and \$3 for each additional hour. If Sarah has at most \$26 to spend on parking, what is the maximum number of hours she can park?
2. A small business produces and sells handmade candles and soaps. Each candle sells for \$12 and takes 2 hours to make. Each soap sells for \$8 and takes 1 hour to make. If the business owner works at most 40 hours per week and wants to earn at least \$350, write a system of inequalities to represent this situation.
3. A rectangular garden must have a perimeter of at least 24 feet but at most 40 feet. If the length is twice the width, what are the possible dimensions?

Chapter Summary

Linear inequalities and systems of inequalities are essential tools for the SAT Math section. Remember these key points:

1. **Always flip the inequality sign** when multiplying or dividing by a negative number
2. **Test points** to verify solutions in systems of inequalities
3. **Translate carefully** from word problems to mathematical inequalities
4. **Consider all constraints** when modeling real-world situations
5. **Check boundary conditions** (\leq vs. $<$ and \geq vs. $>$) as these distinctions often matter in SAT questions

The SAT places increased emphasis on applying these concepts to practical scenarios. Practice identifying constraints in word problems and setting up appropriate inequalities to model them. Success with inequalities on the SAT comes from understanding both the algebraic techniques and the real-world applications.

Quick Reference Guide

Solving Linear Inequalities

1. Simplify both sides
2. Isolate variable term
3. Divide/multiply to isolate variable
4. Flip sign if dividing/multiplying by negative

Systems of Inequalities

1. Graph each inequality
2. Find overlapping region
3. Test specific points when asked

Word Problem Keywords

1. "at least" $\rightarrow \geq$
2. "at most" $\rightarrow \leq$
3. "more than" $\rightarrow >$
4. "less than" $\rightarrow <$
5. "between" \rightarrow compound inequality

Common Mistakes to Avoid

1. Forgetting to flip inequality sign with negatives
2. Confusing \leq with $<$ (or \geq with $>$)
3. Not considering all constraints in word problems

4. Incorrectly graphing boundary lines (solid vs. dashed)

Linear Functions

Linear functions form the backbone of SAT algebra, appearing in roughly 25-30% of all math questions on the digital SAT. This chapter will help you master function notation, interpret graphs of linear functions, and apply these concepts to real-world scenarios.

The SAT places heavy emphasis on understanding functions as models of real-life situations, so we'll focus extensively on practical applications alongside the algebraic fundamentals.

Understanding Linear Functions

A linear function is a function whose graph forms a straight line. It can be written in several forms:

1. **Slope-intercept form:** $f(x) = mx + b$ or $y = mx + b$
2. **Point-slope form:** $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$
3. **Standard form:** $Ax + By = C$
4. **Function notation:** $f(x) = mx + b$

The key characteristics of any linear function are:

1. **Slope (m):** The rate of change
2. **Y-intercept (b):** The value when $x = 0$
3. **X-intercept:** The value of x when $y = 0$

Function Notation

Function notation is a precise way to describe relationships between variables. The SAT extensively uses function notation, and understanding it is crucial for success.

Basic Function Notation

When we write $f(x) = 2x + 3$, we're saying:

1. f is the name of the function
2. x is the input variable
3. $2x + 3$ is the rule that transforms input to output
4. $f(x)$ represents the output value

Evaluating Functions

To evaluate $f(5)$ when $f(x) = 2x + 3$:

1. Replace every x with 5
2. $f(5) = 2(5) + 3 = 10 + 3 = 13$

Example 1: Basic Function Evaluation

If $f(x) = -3x + 7$, what is $f(-2)$?

Solution: $f(-2) = -3(-2) + 7 = 6 + 7 = 13$

Example 2: Composite Evaluation

If $g(x) = 2x - 1$, what is $g(3a)$?

Solution: $g(3a) = 2(3a) - 1 = 6a - 1$

Function Operations

The SAT tests your ability to work with function operations:

1. **Addition:** $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$
2. **Subtraction:** $(f - g)(x) = f(x) - g(x)$

3. **Multiplication:** $(f \times g)(x) = f(x) \times g(x)$

4. **Composition:** $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$

Example 3: Function Operations

If $f(x) = 2x + 1$ and $g(x) = x - 3$, find $(f + g)(4)$.

Solution: $(f + g)(4) = f(4) + g(4)$ $f(4) = 2(4) + 1 = 9$ $g(4) = 4 - 3 = 1$ $(f + g)(4) = 9 + 1 = 10$

Finding Function Rules

A common SAT question type gives you input-output pairs and asks you to find the function rule.

Example 4: Finding the Function

A linear function f satisfies $f(2) = 7$ and $f(5) = 16$. What is $f(x)$?

Solution: Use two points to find slope: $(2, 7)$ and $(5, 16)$ $m = (16 - 7)/(5 - 2) = 9/3 = 3$

Use point-slope form with $(2, 7)$: $y - 7 = 3(x - 2)$ $y - 7 = 3x - 6$ $y = 3x + 1$

Therefore, $f(x) = 3x + 1$

Graphs of Linear Functions

Understanding how to read and interpret graphs of linear functions is essential for the SAT. The test frequently asks you to extract information from graphs or match equations to their graphical representations.

Key Features on a Graph

When analyzing a linear graph, identify:

1. **Y-intercept:** Where the line crosses the y-axis
2. **X-intercept:** Where the line crosses the x-axis

3. **Slope:** Rise over run between any two points
4. **Direction:** Positive slope (rising) or negative slope (falling)

Calculating Slope from a Graph

Slope = (change in y)/(change in x) = rise/run

To find slope:

1. Choose two clear points on the line
2. Count the vertical change (rise)
3. Count the horizontal change (run)
4. Divide rise by run

Example 5: Reading from a Graph

[Imagine a graph showing a line passing through points (0, 3) and (4, -1)]

Find the equation of the line.

Solution: Y-intercept: $b = 3$ (where line crosses y-axis) Slope: $m = (-1 - 3)/(4 - 0)$
 $= -4/4 = -1$

Equation: $y = -x + 3$ or $f(x) = -x + 3$

Interpreting Slope in Context

On the SAT, slope often represents a rate of change in real-world contexts:

1. **Positive slope:** Increasing relationship
2. **Negative slope:** Decreasing relationship
3. **Zero slope:** No change (horizontal line)
4. **Undefined slope:** Vertical line (not a function)

Example 6: Interpreting Slope

A line has equation $y = 2.5x + 20$, where x represents hours worked and y represents total earnings in dollars. What does the slope represent?

Solution: The slope 2.5 represents the hourly wage of \$2.50 per hour.

Parallel and Perpendicular Lines

The SAT frequently tests relationships between lines:

1. **Parallel lines:** Same slope
2. **Perpendicular lines:** Slopes are negative reciprocals ($m_1 \times m_2 = -1$)

Example 7: Perpendicular Lines

If line l has equation $y = \frac{2}{3}x + 5$, which equation represents a line perpendicular to l ?

Solution: Original slope: $m_1 = \frac{2}{3}$ Perpendicular slope: $m_2 = -\frac{3}{2}$ (negative reciprocal)

Any line with slope $-\frac{3}{2}$ is perpendicular to l .

Describing Real-Life Situations with Linear Functions

The SAT heavily emphasizes modeling real-world scenarios with linear functions. These problems test your ability to:

1. Interpret function parameters in context
2. Write functions from verbal descriptions
3. Use functions to make predictions
4. Understand limitations of linear models

Common Real-World Applications

1. Cost and Revenue Functions

- Fixed costs (y-intercept)
- Variable costs (slope)
- Break-even analysis

2. Distance and Time

- Speed (slope)
- Starting position (y-intercept)

3. Temperature Changes

- Rate of change (slope)
- Initial temperature (y-intercept)

4. Population Growth/Decline

- Growth/decline rate (slope)
- Initial population (y-intercept)

Example 8: Cell Phone Plan

A cell phone plan costs \$30 per month plus \$0.10 per minute of calls. Write a function $C(m)$ for the monthly cost based on m minutes used.

Solution: Fixed cost: \$30 (y-intercept) Variable cost: \$0.10 per minute (slope)
 $C(m) = 0.10m + 30$

Example 9: Water Tank

A water tank contains 500 gallons and is draining at 12 gallons per minute. Write a function $W(t)$ for the water remaining after t minutes.

Solution: Initial amount: 500 gallons (y-intercept) Rate of change: -12 gallons/minute (negative slope) $W(t) = -12t + 500$

Domain and Range in Context

Real-world linear functions often have restricted domains:

Example 10: Domain Restrictions

Using the water tank from Example 9, what is the practical domain of $W(t)$?

Solution: The tank empties when $W(t) = 0$: $-12t + 500 = 0$ $t = 500/12 \approx 41.67$ minutes

Practical domain: $0 \leq t \leq 41.67$ (Time cannot be negative, and tank cannot have negative water)

Interpreting Intercepts in Context

Both intercepts often have meaningful interpretations:

Example 11: Business Application

A company's profit P (in thousands of dollars) is given by $P(x) = 0.5x - 10$, where x is the number of units sold (in thousands).

a) What does the y-intercept represent? b) What does the x-intercept represent?

Solution: a) Y-intercept (0, -10): When no units are sold, the company loses \$10,000 (fixed costs) b) X-intercept: Set $P(x) = 0$ $0.5x - 10 = 0$ $x = 20$ The company breaks even at 20,000 units sold

Multi-Step Real-World Problems

The SAT often presents complex scenarios requiring multiple steps:

Example 12: Comparing Plans

Gym A charges \$50 enrollment plus \$30 monthly. Gym B charges \$100 enrollment plus \$25 monthly. After how many months will the total costs be equal?

Solution: Gym A: $C_A(m) = 30m + 50$ Gym B: $C_B(m) = 25m + 100$

Set equal: $30m + 50 = 25m + 100$ $5m = 50$ $m = 10$ months

Piecewise Linear Functions

Real situations sometimes require piecewise functions:

Example 13: Taxi Fare

A taxi charges \$3.50 for the first mile and \$2.00 for each additional mile. Write a function $F(d)$ for the fare based on distance d in miles.

Solution: $F(d) = \begin{cases} 3.50 & \text{if } 0 < d \leq 1 \\ 3.50 + 2(d-1) & \text{if } d > 1 \end{cases}$

Simplified for $d > 1$: $F(d) = 2d + 1.50$

Advanced SAT Topics

Transformations of Linear Functions

The SAT may test your understanding of how changes to the function affect its graph:

1. **Vertical shift:** $f(x) + k$ shifts up by k units
2. **Horizontal shift:** $f(x - h)$ shifts right by h units
3. **Vertical stretch:** $a \cdot f(x)$ stretches by factor a
4. **Reflection:** $-f(x)$ reflects over x -axis

Example 14: Function Transformation

If $f(x) = 2x + 1$, what is the equation of the line that results from shifting $f(x)$ up 3 units and right 2 units?

Solution: Original: $f(x) = 2x + 1$ Right 2: $f(x - 2) = 2(x - 2) + 1 = 2x - 3$ Up 3: $f(x - 2) + 3 = 2x - 3 + 3 = 2x$

New equation: $g(x) = 2x$

Systems of Functions

Sometimes you'll need to find where two linear functions intersect:

Example 15: Intersection Point

If $f(x) = 3x - 2$ and $g(x) = -x + 6$, for what value of x is $f(x) = g(x)$?

Solution: $3x - 2 = -x + 6$ $4x = 8$ $x = 2$

At $x = 2$: $f(2) = g(2) = 4$ Intersection point: $(2, 4)$

SAT Calculator Strategies

Using Tables

For function problems:

1. Enter the function in Y_1
2. Use TABLE feature to evaluate multiple values quickly
3. Helpful for checking patterns or finding specific values

Graphing to Verify

1. Graph both sides of an equation
2. Use INTERSECT to find solutions

3. Verify algebraic work visually

Linear Regression

For data interpretation questions:

1. Enter data points
2. Use LinReg to find best-fit line
3. Interpret slope and intercept in context

Common SAT Pitfalls

Pitfall 1: Confusing $f(x)$ with fx

Remember: $f(x)$ is function notation, not f times x

Pitfall 2: Misinterpreting Negative Slopes

In context problems, negative slope means decrease, not negative values

Pitfall 3: Forgetting Domain Restrictions

Always consider whether negative values or decimals make sense in context

Pitfall 4: X and Y Intercept Mix-ups

X-intercept: Set $y = 0$ and solve for x Y-intercept: Set $x = 0$ and solve for y

Practice Problems

Set A: Function Notation

1. If $h(x) = -2x + 5$, find $h(3) - h(-1)$.
2. If $f(x) = 4x - 7$, for what value of x is $f(x) = 9$?
3. If $g(2) = 7$ and $g(5) = 13$, and g is linear, find $g(10)$.

Set B: Graphs of Linear Functions

4. A line passes through (2, 5) and (6, -3). Find its equation in slope-intercept form.
5. Line p has equation $y = 3x - 4$. Write an equation for a line parallel to p that passes through (0, 2).
6. The graph of $f(x) = mx + 6$ passes through (4, -2). What is m?

Set C: Real-World Applications

7. A plumber charges \$75 for a house call plus \$50 per hour. Write a function for the total cost $C(h)$ based on h hours of work. How much will 3.5 hours cost?
8. A candle is 12 inches tall and burns at 0.5 inches per hour. After how many hours will the candle be 3 inches tall?
9. Company A offers a salary of \$50,000 plus \$1,500 per year of experience. Company B offers \$45,000 plus \$2,000 per year of experience. After how many years will the salaries be equal?
10. A car rental costs \$25 per day plus \$0.20 per mile. If Maria has \$100 to spend and needs the car for 2 days, what is the maximum number of miles she can drive?

Answer Key and Explanations

1. **-8** $h(3) = -2(3) + 5 = -1$ $h(-1) = -2(-1) + 5 = 7$ $h(3) - h(-1) = -1 - 7 = -8$
2. **x = 4** $4x - 7 = 9$ $4x = 16$ $x = 4$
3. **g(10) = 23** Slope: $(13-7)/(5-2) = 6/3 = 2$ $g(x) = 2x + 3$ $g(10) = 20 + 3 = 23$
4. **y = -2x + 9** Slope: $(-3-5)/(6-2) = -8/4 = -2$ Using (2,5): $y - 5 = -2(x - 2)$ $y = -2x + 9$
5. **y = 3x + 2** Parallel means same slope (3) Passes through (0,2), so b = 2

6. **m = -2** $-2 = 4m + 6$ $4m = -8$ $m = -2$
7. **C(h) = 50h + 75; \$250** $C(3.5) = 50(3.5) + 75 = 175 + 75 = 250$
8. **18 hours** $12 - 0.5t = 3$ $0.5t = 9$ $t = 18$
9. **10 years** $50,000 + 1,500x = 45,000 + 2,000x$ $5,000 = 500x$ $x = 10$
10. **250 miles** Cost: $25(2) + 0.20m = 100$ $50 + 0.20m = 100$ $0.20m = 50$ $m = 250$

Key Takeaways

1. **Master function notation:** It's the language of SAT math
2. **Connect algebra to graphs:** Visualize what equations mean
3. **Think in context:** What do slope and intercepts represent?
4. **Check reasonableness:** Does your answer make sense in the real world?
5. **Practice interpretation:** The SAT emphasizes understanding over computation
6. **Know your forms:** Be fluent in converting between different linear equation forms

Linear functions are everywhere on the SAT—from pure algebra questions to data analysis and word problems. By mastering the concepts in this chapter, you'll be prepared to tackle any linear function question with confidence.

Remember, the SAT rewards deep understanding of how linear functions model real-world relationships, not just mechanical calculation skills.

SAT Problem-Solving and Data Analysis

Rates, Ratios, Proportions, Percents, & Units

In the real world, we rarely deal with numbers in isolation. We compare quantities, calculate discounts, determine speeds, and convert between different units of measurement. This chapter covers the fundamental tools for working with related quantities—skills that appear throughout the SAT Math section and are essential for college-level coursework in science, economics, and data analysis.

The SAT emphasizes practical applications of these concepts. You won't just calculate a percentage; you'll interpret what that percentage means in context. You won't merely convert units; you'll use those conversions to solve multi-step problems. This chapter will prepare you to handle these questions with confidence and efficiency.

Part I: Rates

A rate is a ratio that compares two quantities with different units. Understanding rates is crucial for solving problems involving speed, productivity, density, and many other real-world applications.

Understanding Rate Relationships

The fundamental rate equation connects three quantities:

Quantity = Rate \times Time (or more generally, Rate \times Base Unit)

This relationship can be rearranged as needed:

- Rate = Quantity \div Time
- Time = Quantity \div Rate

Common Rate Types

Speed/Velocity Rates

Distance = Rate \times Time ($d = rt$)

Example 1.1: A car travels 240 miles in 4 hours. What is its average speed?

Solution:

- Rate = Distance \div Time
- Rate = 240 miles \div 4 hours = 60 mph

Example 1.2: If a cyclist travels at 15 mph, how far can she travel in 2.5 hours?

Solution:

- Distance = Rate \times Time
- Distance = 15 mph \times 2.5 hours = 37.5 miles

Work Rates

Work rates measure productivity: how much work is completed per unit of time.

Example 1.3: If a printer can print 40 pages per minute, how long will it take to print a 280-page document?

Solution:

- Time = Quantity \div Rate
- Time = 280 pages \div 40 pages/minute = 7 minutes

Flow Rates

These involve liquids, gases, or other substances flowing over time.

Example 1.4: A pipe fills a tank at a rate of 12 gallons per minute. If the tank holds 450 gallons, how long will it take to fill?

Solution:

- Time = 450 gallons \div 12 gallons/minute = 37.5 minutes

Unit Rates and Comparison

A unit rate has a denominator of 1. Converting to unit rates makes comparison easier.

Example 1.5: Compare the value of two juice options:

- Option A: 64 oz for \$4.80
- Option B: 48 oz for \$3.84

Solution:

- Option A unit rate: $\$4.80 \div 64 \text{ oz} = \0.075 per oz
- Option B unit rate: $\$3.84 \div 48 \text{ oz} = \0.08 per oz
- Option A is the better value

Combined Work Rates

When multiple entities work together, add their individual rates.

Key Principle: If Worker A can complete a job in a hours and Worker B can complete it in b hours:

- A's rate = $1/a$ jobs per hour
- B's rate = $1/b$ jobs per hour
- Combined rate = $1/a + 1/b$ jobs per hour

Example 1.6: Machine A can complete a task in 3 hours. Machine B can complete the same task in 5 hours. How long will it take both machines working together?

Solution:

- Machine A's rate: $1/3$ task per hour
- Machine B's rate: $1/5$ task per hour
- Combined rate: $1/3 + 1/5 = 5/15 + 3/15 = 8/15$ task per hour
- Time = $1 \text{ task} \div (8/15 \text{ tasks/hour}) = 15/8 = 1.875 \text{ hours} = 1 \text{ hour } 52.5 \text{ minutes}$

Average Rate Problems

For round trips or segments with different rates, you cannot simply average the rates.

Example 1.7: A delivery truck travels from warehouse to store at 30 mph and returns at 60 mph. What is the average speed for the round trip?

Solution:

- Let d = one-way distance
- Time to store: $d/30$ hours
- Time returning: $d/60$ hours
- Total time: $d/30 + d/60 = 2d/60 + d/60 = 3d/60 = d/20$ hours
- Total distance: $2d$
- Average rate = $2d \div (d/20) = 40 \text{ mph}$

Note: The average (40 mph) is not the arithmetic mean of 30 and 60!

Rate Change Problems

The SAT often asks about the effect of changing rates.

Example 1.8: A factory produces widgets at 50 per hour. If the rate increases by 20%, how many widgets will be produced in 8 hours?

Solution:

- New rate = $50 + (0.20 \times 50) = 50 + 10 = 60$ widgets/hour
- Production in 8 hours = $60 \times 8 = 480$ widgets

Part II: Ratios and Proportions

Understanding Ratios

A ratio compares two or more quantities. Ratios can be written in three ways:

- Using a colon: 3:4
- As a fraction: $\frac{3}{4}$
- Using the word "to": 3 to 4

Simplifying Ratios

Like fractions, ratios should be reduced to simplest form.

Example 2.1: Simplify the ratio 24:36

Solution:

- Find GCF of 24 and 36: $\text{GCF} = 12$
- $24:36 = 24 \div 12 : 36 \div 12 = 2:3$

Part-to-Part vs. Part-to-Whole Ratios

Understanding the distinction is crucial for SAT problems.

Example 2.2: In a class, the ratio of boys to girls is 3:5. What fraction of the class is boys?

Solution:

- Boys:Girls = 3:5 (part-to-part)

- Total parts = $3 + 5 = 8$
- Fraction of boys = $3/8$ (part-to-whole)

Scaling Ratios

When quantities maintain a constant ratio, we can scale up or down.

Example 2.3: A recipe calls for flour and sugar in the ratio 5:2. If you use 15 cups of flour, how much sugar do you need?

Solution:

- Set up proportion: $5/2 = 15/x$
- Cross-multiply: $5x = 30$
- $x = 6$ cups of sugar

Three-Part Ratios

Some SAT problems involve ratios with three or more parts.

Example 2.4: The angles of a triangle are in the ratio 2:3:4. Find the measure of each angle.

Solution:

- Total parts = $2 + 3 + 4 = 9$
- Sum of angles in triangle = 180°
- Value of one part = $180^\circ \div 9 = 20^\circ$
- Angles: $2(20^\circ) = 40^\circ$, $3(20^\circ) = 60^\circ$, $4(20^\circ) = 80^\circ$

Proportions

A proportion states that two ratios are equal: $a/b = c/d$

Solving Proportions

Cross-multiplication: If $a/b = c/d$, then $ad = bc$

Example 2.5: Solve for x : $3/4 = x/20$

Solution:

- Cross-multiply: $4x = 60$
- $x = 15$

Direct Variation

When y varies directly with x : $y = kx$ (where k is the constant of variation)

Example 2.6: If y varies directly with x , and $y = 12$ when $x = 3$, find y when $x = 7$.

Solution:

- Find k : $12 = k(3)$, so $k = 4$
- Therefore: $y = 4x$
- When $x = 7$: $y = 4(7) = 28$

Inverse Variation

When y varies inversely with x : $y = k/x$

Example 2.7: The time to complete a job varies inversely with the number of workers. If 6 workers can complete a job in 8 hours, how long will it take 4 workers?

Solution:

- Let t = time, w = workers
- $tw = k$ (constant)
- $6 \times 8 = 48 = k$

- For 4 workers: $4t = 48$
- $t = 12$ hours

Scale Factors and Similar Figures

In similar figures, all corresponding lengths are in the same ratio.

Example 2.8: Two similar triangles have corresponding sides in the ratio 3:5. If the smaller triangle has a perimeter of 24 cm, what is the perimeter of the larger triangle?

Solution:

- Scale factor = $5/3$
- Larger perimeter = $24 \times (5/3) = 40$ cm

Important: Areas scale with the square of the linear scale factor, and volumes scale with the cube.

Part III: Unit Conversion

Unit conversion is essential for solving real-world problems and appears frequently on the SAT.

Conversion Factors

A conversion factor is a ratio equal to 1 that allows you to change units.

Common conversions to memorize:

- 1 foot = 12 inches
- 1 yard = 3 feet
- 1 mile = 5,280 feet
- 1 hour = 60 minutes

- 1 minute = 60 seconds
- 1 pound = 16 ounces
- 1 gallon = 4 quarts
- 1 meter \approx 3.28 feet
- 1 kilometer \approx 0.62 miles
- 1 kilogram \approx 2.2 pounds

Single-Step Conversions

Multiply by the appropriate conversion factor.

Example 3.1: Convert 45 minutes to seconds.

Solution:

- $45 \text{ minutes} \times (60 \text{ seconds}/1 \text{ minute}) = 2,700 \text{ seconds}$

Multi-Step Conversions

Chain conversion factors together.

Example 3.2: Convert 72 kilometers per hour to feet per second.

Solution:

- Start: 72 km/hour
- $72 \text{ km/hour} \times (1000 \text{ m}/1 \text{ km}) \times (3.28 \text{ ft}/1 \text{ m}) \times (1 \text{ hour}/3600 \text{ sec})$
- $= 72 \times 1000 \times 3.28 \div 3600$
- $= 65.6 \text{ ft/sec}$

Dimensional Analysis

Keep track of units throughout calculations to ensure correctness.

Example 3.3: A car travels at 65 mph for 2.5 hours. How many kilometers did it travel? (Use 1 mile \approx 1.6 km)

Solution:

- Distance = 65 miles/hour \times 2.5 hours = 162.5 miles
- 162.5 miles \times (1.6 km/1 mile) = 260 km

Area and Volume Conversions

Remember: Area units are squared, volume units are cubed.

Example 3.4: Convert 2 square yards to square feet.

Solution:

- 1 yard = 3 feet
- 1 square yard = $3^2 = 9$ square feet
- 2 square yards = $2 \times 9 = 18$ square feet

Compound Units

Many real-world measurements involve compound units.

Example 3.5: Gas costs \$3.20 per gallon. A car's fuel efficiency is 28 miles per gallon. What is the cost per mile?

Solution:

- Cost per mile = (Cost per gallon) \div (Miles per gallon)
- Cost per mile = $\$3.20 \div 28 = \0.114 per mile \approx 11.4 cents per mile

Part IV: Percents

Percentages are ubiquitous in real life and on the SAT. Master these concepts for questions about discounts, taxes, tips, population changes, and data interpretation.

Basic Percent Calculations

Remember: Percent means "per hundred"

Finding a Percent of a Number

Percent \times Base = Amount

Example 4.1: What is 35% of 280?

Solution:

- $0.35 \times 280 = 98$

Finding What Percent One Number Is of Another

(Part/Whole) \times 100 = Percent

Example 4.2: What percent is 45 of 180?

Solution:

- $(45/180) \times 100 = 0.25 \times 100 = 25\%$

Finding the Whole When Given a Part and Percent

Part \div Percent = Whole

Example 4.3: If 24 is 30% of a number, what is the number?

Solution:

- $24 \div 0.30 = 80$

Percent Increase and Decrease

New Value = Original \times (1 \pm Percent Change)

- Use + for increase
- Use - for decrease

Example 4.4: A jacket originally priced at \$120 is on sale for 25% off. What is the sale price?

Solution:

- Sale price = $\$120 \times (1 - 0.25)$
- Sale price = $\$120 \times 0.75 = \90

Multiple Percent Changes

Apply percent changes sequentially, not additively.

Example 4.5: A stock increases by 20% on Monday, then decreases by 15% on Tuesday. What is the overall percent change?

Solution:

- Let original price = 100
- After Monday: $100 \times 1.20 = 120$
- After Tuesday: $120 \times 0.85 = 102$
- Overall change: $(102 - 100)/100 = 2\%$ increase

Note: $20\% - 15\% \neq 5\%$ (this would be incorrect!)

Percent Greater Than 100%

These represent more than doubling.

Example 4.6: A town's population increased by 150%. If the original population was 8,000, what is the new population?

Solution:

- Increase of 150% means new = original $\times (1 + 1.50) = \text{original} \times 2.50$
- New population = $8,000 \times 2.50 = 20,000$

Reverse Percent Problems

Working backwards from a final value.

Example 4.7: After a 20% discount, a customer paid \$64 for an item. What was the original price?

Solution:

- \$64 represents 80% of original ($100\% - 20\% = 80\%$)
- Original = $\$64 \div 0.80 = \80

Part V: Percent Change

Percent change measures the relative change between two values and is crucial for interpreting data trends.

The Percent Change Formula

Percent Change = $[(\text{New Value} - \text{Original Value}) / \text{Original Value}] \times 100\%$

Key points:

- Always divide by the ORIGINAL (starting) value
- Positive result = increase
- Negative result = decrease

Basic Percent Change

Example 5.1: A company's revenue increased from \$2.4 million to \$2.7 million. What was the percent increase?

Solution:

- $\text{Change} = \$2.7\text{M} - \$2.4\text{M} = \$0.3\text{M}$
- $\text{Percent change} = (\$0.3\text{M} / \$2.4\text{M}) \times 100\% = 12.5\% \text{ increase}$

Percent Change with Decreases

Example 5.2: Enrollment at a school dropped from 450 students to 396 students. What was the percent decrease?

Solution:

- $\text{Change} = 396 - 450 = -54$
- $\text{Percent change} = (-54 / 450) \times 100\% = -12\% \text{ (12\% decrease)}$

Finding Values After Percent Change

Example 5.3: If a quantity increases by 35%, by what factor does it multiply?

Solution:

- $\text{New} = \text{Original} \times (1 + 0.35) = \text{Original} \times 1.35$
- The multiplication factor is 1.35

Finding Original Values

Example 5.4: After a 28% increase, the population of a city is 384,000. What was the original population?

Solution:

- $384,000 = \text{Original} \times 1.28$

- Original = $384,000 \div 1.28 = 300,000$

Comparing Percent Changes

The SAT often asks you to compare percent changes in different contexts.

Example 5.5: Store A raises its price from \$50 to \$60. Store B raises its price from \$40 to \$50. Which store had the greater percent increase?

Solution:

- Store A: $(60 - 50)/50 \times 100\% = 20\%$
- Store B: $(50 - 40)/40 \times 100\% = 25\%$
- Store B had the greater percent increase

Percent Change in Real-World Contexts

Population Growth

Example 5.6: A bacteria culture grows by 15% each hour. If it starts with 1,000 bacteria, how many will there be after 3 hours?

Solution:

- After 1 hour: $1,000 \times 1.15 = 1,150$
- After 2 hours: $1,150 \times 1.15 = 1,322.5$
- After 3 hours: $1,322.5 \times 1.15 = 1,520.875 \approx 1,521$ bacteria

Financial Applications

Example 5.7: An investment loses 20% of its value in Year 1, then gains 25% in Year 2. What is the overall percent change?

Solution:

- After Year 1: $100 \times 0.80 = 80$

- After Year 2: $80 \times 1.25 = 100$
- Overall change: 0% (back to original value)

Common Misconceptions

Percent Change vs. Percentage Point Change

These are different concepts that the SAT may test.

Example 5.8: Unemployment decreased from 8% to 6%. What was the percent decrease in unemployment?

Solution:

- Percentage point decrease: $8\% - 6\% = 2$ percentage points
- Percent decrease: $(8 - 6)/8 \times 100\% = 25\%$ decrease

Symmetric Percent Changes

A percent increase followed by the same percent decrease (or vice versa) does not return to the original value.

Example 5.9: A stock increases by 50%, then decreases by 50%. What is the overall change?

Solution:

- After increase: $100 \times 1.50 = 150$
- After decrease: $150 \times 0.50 = 75$
- Overall change: -25%

Integrated Problem-Solving

The SAT often combines multiple concepts in a single problem. Here's how to approach complex questions.

Multi-Concept Problems

Example 6.1: A car rental company charges \$45 per day plus \$0.25 per mile. If Juan rented a car for 3 days and was charged \$210, how many miles did he drive? If gas costs \$3.60 per gallon and the car gets 30 miles per gallon, what percent of his total cost was for gas?

Solution: Part 1 - Find miles driven:

- Daily charges: $\$45 \times 3 = \135
- Mileage charges: $\$210 - \$135 = \$75$
- Miles driven: $\$75 \div \$0.25/\text{mile} = 300 \text{ miles}$

Part 2 - Calculate gas cost:

- Gallons used: $300 \text{ miles} \div 30 \text{ miles/gallon} = 10 \text{ gallons}$
- Gas cost: $10 \text{ gallons} \times \$3.60/\text{gallon} = \$36$

Part 3 - Find percent:

- Total cost: $\$210 + \$36 = \$246$
- Percent for gas: $(\$36/\$246) \times 100\% \approx 14.6\%$

Data Interpretation with Percents and Ratios

Example 6.2: In a survey of 1,200 students:

- The ratio of freshmen to sophomores to juniors to seniors is 3:3:2:2
- 45% of freshmen play a sport
- 30% of all non-freshmen play a sport

How many students in total play a sport?

Solution: Step 1 - Find number in each class:

- Total ratio parts: $3 + 3 + 2 + 2 = 10$
- Freshmen: $(3/10) \times 1,200 = 360$
- Non-freshmen: $1,200 - 360 = 840$

Step 2 - Calculate athletes:

- Freshmen athletes: $0.45 \times 360 = 162$
- Non-freshmen athletes: $0.30 \times 840 = 252$
- Total athletes: $162 + 252 = 414$ students

Scientific Applications

Example 6.3: A chemical solution is 15% acid by volume. How many liters of pure acid must be added to 20 liters of this solution to create a solution that is 40% acid?

Solution:

- Current acid: $0.15 \times 20 = 3$ liters
- Let x = liters of pure acid to add
- New total acid: $3 + x$ liters
- New total volume: $20 + x$ liters
- Set up equation: $(3 + x)/(20 + x) = 0.40$
- $3 + x = 0.40(20 + x)$
- $3 + x = 8 + 0.40x$
- $0.60x = 5$
- $x = 8.33$ liters

Practice Problems

Rates

1. Two trains leave stations 360 miles apart at the same time, traveling toward each other. One travels at 55 mph and the other at 65 mph. How long until they meet?
2. Machine A can fill 150 bottles per minute. Machine B can fill 200 bottles per minute. How long will it take both machines working together to fill 14,000 bottles?

Ratios and Proportions

3. The ratio of cats to dogs at an animal shelter is 5:8. If there are 104 animals total, how many are dogs?
4. A map has a scale of 1 inch : 25 miles. If two cities are 3.5 inches apart on the map, what is their actual distance?
5. If 8 workers can complete a job in 12 days, how many days will it take 6 workers to complete the same job?

Unit Conversion

6. Convert 88 feet per second to miles per hour.
7. A swimming pool holds 15,000 gallons. How many cubic feet is this? (1 cubic foot \approx 7.48 gallons)

Percents

8. After a 15% discount and 8% sales tax, Marcus paid \$73.44 for a jacket. What was the original price before the discount?
9. A company's expenses increased from \$450,000 to \$585,000. What was the percent increase?

Percent Change

10. Town A's population increased by 20% to 18,000. Town B's population decreased by 15% to 17,000. Which town had the larger original population?

Multi-Concept

11. A recipe for 8 servings calls for ingredients in the ratio 4:3:2 by weight (flour:sugar:butter). To make 12 servings, you need 600 grams of flour. If butter costs \$4.50 per kilogram, what is the cost of butter for the 12-serving recipe?
12. An investor puts 40% of her money in stocks earning 8% annually, and the rest in bonds earning 5% annually. If her total annual earnings are \$1,980, how much did she invest in stocks?

Solutions

1. 3 hours

- Combined approach rate: $55 + 65 = 120$ mph
- Time = $360 \text{ miles} \div 120 \text{ mph} = 3$ hours

2. 40 minutes

- Combined rate: $150 + 200 = 350$ bottles/minute
- Time = $14,000 \div 350 = 40$ minutes

3. 64 dogs

- Ratio 5:8 means $5 + 8 = 13$ parts total
- Each part: $104 \div 13 = 8$ animals
- Dogs: $8 \times 8 = 64$

4. 87.5 miles

- Distance = 3.5 inches \times 25 miles/inch = 87.5 miles

5. 16 days

- Work = 8 workers \times 12 days = 96 worker-days
- Time for 6 workers = $96 \div 6 = 16$ days

6. 60 mph

- $88 \text{ ft/sec} \times (1 \text{ mile}/5,280 \text{ ft}) \times (3,600 \text{ sec}/1 \text{ hour}) = 60 \text{ mph}$

7. 2,005 cubic feet

- $15,000 \text{ gallons} \div 7.48 \text{ gallons/cubic foot} = 2,005.3 \text{ cubic feet}$

8. \$80

- Let x = original price
- After discount: $0.85x$
- After tax: $0.85x \times 1.08 = 73.44$
- $0.918x = 73.44$
- $x = \$80$

9. 30% increase

- Change = $585,000 - 450,000 = 135,000$
- Percent = $(135,000/450,000) \times 100\% = 30\%$

10. Town B (20,000)

- Town A original: $18,000 \div 1.20 = 15,000$
- Town B original: $17,000 \div 0.85 = 20,000$

11. \$1.35

- 8-serving ratio 4:3:2, so 12 servings need $1.5\times$ each
- If flour is 600g, one part = $600 \div 6 = 100\text{g}$
- Butter needed: $3 \times 100\text{g} = 300\text{g} = 0.3\text{ kg}$
- Cost: $0.3\text{ kg} \times \$4.50/\text{kg} = \1.35

12. \$12,000

- Let x = total investment
- Stocks: $0.40x$ earning 8%
- Bonds: $0.60x$ earning 5%
- $0.40x(0.08) + 0.60x(0.05) = 1,980$
- $0.032x + 0.03x = 1,980$
- $0.062x = 1,980$
- $x = \$31,935$ total
- Stocks: $0.40 \times \$31,935 = \$12,774 \approx \$12,000$

Key Strategies for SAT Success

1. Unit Analysis

Always include units in your calculations. This helps:

- Catch errors
- Guide problem-solving
- Verify answers make sense

2. Estimation

Before calculating exactly:

- Round numbers to estimate
- Check if your answer is reasonable
- Eliminate obviously wrong choices

3. Proportion Setup

For any proportion problem:

- Identify what varies together
- Set up ratios consistently
- Cross-multiply to solve

4. Percent Change Shortcuts

- 10% increase: multiply by 1.1
- 25% decrease: multiply by 0.75
- 50% increase: multiply by 1.5

5. Common Conversions

Memorize these to save time:

- $\frac{1}{4} = 25\% = 0.25$
- $\frac{1}{3} \approx 33.3\% \approx 0.333$
- $\frac{1}{5} = 20\% = 0.2$
- $\frac{3}{4} = 75\% = 0.75$

6. Work Backwards

For percent problems, sometimes it's easier to:

- Test answer choices
- Work from final to initial value
- Use concrete numbers (like 100) for variables

Conclusion

Mastery of rates, ratios, proportions, percents, and units provides a toolkit for solving a wide variety of SAT problems. These concepts appear not just in dedicated questions but woven throughout geometry, statistics, and advanced math problems.

Remember that the SAT emphasizes practical applications. When you see these concepts:

- Consider the real-world context
- Check that your answer makes sense
- Look for connections between different parts of the problem

With consistent practice, these calculations will become second nature, allowing you to focus on problem-solving strategy rather than computational mechanics. This fluency is essential not just for the SAT, but for the quantitative reasoning you'll need in college and beyond.

Tables, Statistics and Probability

Tables and Graphs

Data representation is fundamental to the SAT. You'll encounter various formats including frequency tables, two-way tables, bar graphs, histograms, scatterplots,

and line graphs. Success requires quickly extracting relevant information and understanding what the data tells us.

Reading and Interpreting Tables

Tables organize data systematically. The SAT often uses two-way tables (also called contingency tables) that display relationships between two categorical variables.

Example: Two-Way Table Analysis

A survey asked 200 students about their preferred study location:

| | Library | Coffee Shop | Home | Total |
|------------|---------|-------------|------|-------|
| Freshmen | 25 | 15 | 40 | 80 |
| Sophomores | 30 | 20 | 30 | 80 |
| Juniors | 15 | 10 | 15 | 40 |
| Total | 70 | 45 | 85 | 200 |

What percentage of students who prefer studying at home are freshmen?

Solution: Students who prefer home: 85 Freshmen who prefer home: 40
Percentage: $40/85 \times 100\% = 47.1\%$

Calculating Conditional Probabilities from Tables

Two-way tables are perfect for finding conditional probabilities—the probability of one event given that another has occurred.

Example: Conditional Probability

Using the same table, what's the probability that a randomly selected sophomore prefers the library?

Solution: $P(\text{Library} \mid \text{Sophomore}) = \text{Number of sophomores who prefer library} / \text{Total sophomores} = 30/80 = 0.375$ or 37.5%

Graph Interpretation

The SAT tests your ability to read various graph types and extract meaningful information.

Bar Graphs and Histograms

1. Bar graphs: Categories on x-axis (can be reordered)
2. Histograms: Continuous numerical data in bins (order matters)

Key skills:

1. Identifying the highest/lowest values
2. Comparing categories
3. Calculating totals from individual bars
4. Understanding that histogram areas represent frequencies

Example: Histogram Analysis

A histogram shows test scores for 100 students:

1. 60-70: 15 students
2. 70-80: 25 students
3. 80-90: 35 students
4. 90-100: 25 students

What percentage scored at least 80?

Solution: Students scoring 80 or above: $35 + 25 = 60$ Percentage: $60/100 = 60\%$

Scatterplots and Trend Analysis

Scatterplots show relationships between two quantitative variables. The SAT often asks about:

1. Direction of association (positive/negative)
2. Strength of association (strong/weak)
3. Outliers
4. Predictions using trend lines

Example: Scatterplot Interpretation

A scatterplot shows hours studied (x) versus test score (y) with a positive linear trend. If the line of best fit is $y = 5x + 60$, what score does the model predict for someone who studies 6 hours?

Solution: $y = 5(6) + 60 = 30 + 60 = 90$

The model predicts a score of 90.

Common Graph Misinterpretations to Avoid

Misleading Scales: Always check if the y-axis starts at zero

Correlation vs. Causation: Association doesn't imply one variable causes the other

Extrapolation Dangers: Be cautious about predictions outside the data range

Statistics

Statistical measures help us summarize and understand data sets. The SAT focuses on practical interpretation rather than complex calculations.

Measures of Center

Mean (Average)

1. Sum of all values divided by count
2. Affected by extreme values (outliers)
3. Best for symmetric distributions

Median

1. Middle value when data is ordered
2. Resistant to outliers
3. Better for skewed distributions

Mode

1. Most frequent value
2. Can have multiple modes or none
3. Useful for categorical data

Example: Choosing Appropriate Measures

Five homes on a street sold for: \$200,000, \$220,000, \$225,000, \$230,000, and \$1,200,000.

Calculate the mean and median. Which better represents typical home prices?

Solution: Mean = $(200,000 + 220,000 + 225,000 + 230,000 + 1,200,000) / 5 = \$415,000$
Median = \$225,000 (middle value when ordered)

The median better represents typical prices because the \$1.2 million home is an outlier that drastically inflates the mean.

Measures of Spread

Range

1. Maximum - Minimum
2. Simple but affected by outliers

Interquartile Range (IQR)

1. $Q3 - Q1$ (75th percentile - 25th percentile)

2. Resistant to outliers
3. Represents the middle 50% of data

Standard Deviation

1. Measures typical distance from mean
2. Larger values indicate more spread
3. Affected by outliers

Example: Using IQR

Test scores: 72, 75, 78, 82, 85, 88, 91, 94, 97

Find the IQR.

Solution: First, find quartiles:

1. Q1 (25th percentile): 78
2. Q3 (75th percentile): 91
3. $IQR = 91 - 78 = 13$

Box Plots (Box-and-Whisker Plots)

Box plots visually display the five-number summary:

1. Minimum
2. Q1 (first quartile)
3. Median
4. Q3 (third quartile)
5. Maximum

Interpreting Box Plots

The box represents the IQR (middle 50% of data) **The line in the box** shows the median **Whiskers** extend to min and max (excluding outliers) **Outliers** shown as individual points beyond $1.5 \times \text{IQR}$ from quartiles

Example: Box Plot Comparison

Two classes take the same test. Class A has a wider box and longer whiskers than Class B. What can you conclude?

Solution: Class A has more variability in scores. The wider box means a larger IQR (more spread in the middle 50%), and longer whiskers indicate a larger overall range.

Normal Distribution

Many real-world variables follow a normal (bell-shaped) distribution. Key properties:

1. Symmetric around the mean
2. Mean = Median = Mode
3. Approximately 68% within 1 standard deviation of mean
4. Approximately 95% within 2 standard deviations
5. Approximately 99.7% within 3 standard deviations

Example: Normal Distribution Application

Heights of adult males have normal distribution, with a mean of 70 inches and a standard deviation of 3 inches. Approximately what percentage are between 67 and 73 inches tall?

Solution: $67 = 70 - 3$ (one standard deviation below mean) $73 = 70 + 3$ (one standard deviation above mean)

About 68% are within one standard deviation of the mean.

Surveys and Data Samples

Understanding proper data collection methods is crucial for evaluating statistical claims. The SAT tests your ability to identify bias and assess the validity of conclusions.

Types of Sampling Methods

Simple Random Sample

1. Every member has equal chance of selection
2. Unbiased but may be impractical

Stratified Random Sample

1. Population divided into groups (strata)
2. Random sample from each stratum
3. Ensures representation of all groups

Systematic Sample

1. Select every n th member
2. Easy but can introduce bias if pattern exists

Convenience Sample

1. Select easily accessible members
2. Often biased, not representative

Example: Identifying Sampling Bias

A school wants to survey student lunch preferences. Which method would give the most representative results?

A) Survey students in the cafeteria during lunch

- B) Survey every 10th student from an alphabetical roster
- C) Survey all students in advanced math classes
- D) Post an online survey and use whoever responds

Solution: B is best (systematic sampling from complete roster).

1. A biases toward students who eat cafeteria food
2. C biases toward advanced math students
3. D suffers from voluntary response bias

Sources of Bias

Selection Bias: Sample doesn't represent population

Response Bias: Questions influence answers

Nonresponse Bias: Certain groups don't respond

Voluntary Response Bias: Only passionate people respond

Survey Design Principles

Good surveys have:

1. Clear, neutral questions
2. Random sampling methods
3. Adequate sample size
4. Representative samples

Example: Evaluating Survey Validity

A town surveys 50 residents at the local gym about building a new recreation center. 90% support it. Why might this overestimate town support?

Solution: Gym members are more likely to value recreation facilities than the general population (selection bias). The sample isn't representative of all town residents.

Margin of Error and Confidence

Larger samples generally produce more reliable results. The margin of error decreases as sample size increases.

Key concept: Results from samples have uncertainty. A 95% confidence interval means if we repeated the survey many times, about 95% of intervals would contain the true population value.

Example: Interpreting Margin of Error

A poll reports 52% support \pm 3% margin of error. What's the range of likely support?

Solution: $52\% - 3\% = 49\%$ (lower bound) $52\% + 3\% = 55\%$ (upper bound) True support is likely between 49% and 55%.

Experimental Design

Observational Studies: Observe without intervention **Experiments:** Actively impose treatments

Key experimental principles:

1. **Control:** Compare treatment to control group
2. **Randomization:** Randomly assign treatments
3. **Replication:** Sufficient sample size
4. **Blinding:** Subjects/researchers don't know treatment

Example: Identifying Study Type

Researchers want to study if exercise improves test scores. Which is an experiment?

A) Track students' exercise habits and test scores

B) Randomly assign students to exercise or no-exercise groups

Solution: B is an experiment (researchers control who exercises). A is observational (researchers only observe existing behaviors).

Probability

Probability quantifies uncertainty and likelihood. The SAT focuses on practical probability calculations and understanding.

Basic Probability Rules

Probability of an event = (Favorable outcomes)/(Total possible outcomes)

Key principles:

1. Probabilities range from 0 to 1
2. $P(\text{event happens}) + P(\text{event doesn't happen}) = 1$
3. $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$

Example: Simple Probability

A bag has 3 red, 5 blue and 2 green marbles. What is the probability of drawing blue from the bag?

Solution: $P(\text{blue}) = \text{Number of blue} / \text{Total marbles} = 5/10 = 0.5$

Compound Events

Independent Events: One doesn't affect the other

1. $P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B)$

Dependent Events: One affects the other

1. $P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$

Example: Independent Events

A coin is flipped twice. What's the probability of two heads?

Solution: $P(\text{H on first}) = 1/2$ $P(\text{H on second}) = 1/2$ $P(\text{both H}) = 1/2 \times 1/2 = 1/4$

Example: Dependent Events

Two cards are drawn without replacement from a standard deck. What's the probability both are aces?

Solution: $P(\text{first ace}) = 4/52$ $P(\text{second ace} \mid \text{first was ace}) = 3/51$ $P(\text{both aces}) = 4/52 \times 3/51 = 12/2652 = 1/221$

Conditional Probability

$P(A|B)$ means "probability of A given that B occurred"

Formula: $P(A|B) = P(A \text{ and } B) / P(B)$

Example: Medical Testing

A disease affects 1% of people. A test is 95% accurate for both positive and negative results. If someone tests positive, what's the probability they have the disease?

Solution: Let's use 10,000 people:

1. 100 have disease (1%)
2. 9,900 don't have disease

Of the 100 with disease: 95 test positive, 5 test negative
Of the 9,900 without: 495 test positive, 9,405 test negative

Total positive tests: $95 + 495 = 590$ $P(\text{disease} \mid \text{positive test}) = 95/590 \approx 16.1\%$

This surprising result shows why understanding conditional probability matters!

Permutations and Combinations

Permutations: Order matters

$$1. \quad nPr = n!/(n-r)!$$

Combinations: Order doesn't matter

$$1. \quad nCr = n!/[r!(n-r)!]$$

Example: Committee Selection

From 10 students, how many ways can we select a 3-person committee?

Solution: Order doesn't matter (committee positions are equal) $10C3 = 10!/(3! \times 7!) = (10 \times 9 \times 8)/(3 \times 2 \times 1) = 720/6 = 120$

Expected Value

Expected value is the average outcome over many trials.

$$E(X) = \Sigma(\text{outcome} \times \text{probability})$$

Example: Game Expected Value

A game costs \$2 to play. You win \$10 with probability 0.15 and \$0 otherwise. What's the expected value?

Solution: $E(\text{winnings}) = \$10(0.15) + \$0(0.85) = \$1.50$ $E(\text{profit}) = \$1.50 - \$2 = -\$0.50$

On average, you lose \$0.50 per game.

Integrated Problem-Solving

The SAT often combines multiple concepts in a single question.

Example: Multi-Concept Problem

A study tracks 1,000 adults' coffee consumption and sleep quality:

| | Good Sleep | Poor Sleep | Total |
|-----------|------------|------------|-------|
| No Coffee | 180 | 120 | 300 |
| 1-2 Cups | 250 | 150 | 400 |
| 3+ Cups | 70 | 230 | 300 |
| Total | 500 | 500 | 1,000 |

Questions: a) What percentage drink 3+ cups? b) What's $P(\text{good sleep} \mid 1\text{-}2 \text{ cups})$?
c) Is there an association between coffee and sleep?

Solutions: a) $300/1,000 = 30\%$ b) $P(\text{good sleep} \mid 1\text{-}2 \text{ cups}) = 250/400 = 62.5\%$ c)
Yes. $P(\text{good sleep})$ decreases as coffee increases:

1. No coffee: $180/300 = 60\%$
2. 1-2 cups: $250/400 = 62.5\%$
3. 3+ cups: $70/300 = 23.3\%$

Common SAT Strategy Tips

For Tables and Graphs

1. Read titles and labels carefully
2. Check units and scales
3. Use your pencil to track rows/columns

For Statistics

1. Consider context when choosing measures
2. Remember: median for skewed data, mean for symmetric
3. Always interpret in real-world terms

For Surveys

1. Look for bias in sampling method
2. Consider who might not respond
3. Question wording matters

For Probability

1. Draw diagrams or tables for complex problems
2. Check if events are independent
3. Verify your answer makes sense (between 0 and 1)

Practice Problems

Problem Set A: Tables and Graphs

1. A two-way table shows 150 students' favorite subjects and grade levels. If 40 freshmen like math and 60 total students like math, what's the probability a math-lover is a freshman?
2. A histogram of exam scores shows: 50-60 (5 students), 60-70 (15 students), 70-80 (25 students), 80-90 (20 students), 90-100 (10 students). What percentage scored below 70?
3. A scatterplot shows a negative association between TV hours and GPA. If the trend line is $\text{GPA} = -0.2(\text{TV hours}) + 3.8$, predict the GPA for someone watching 5 hours of TV daily.

Problem Set B: Statistics

4. Five houses sold for: \$300K, \$320K, \$325K, \$330K, \$920K. Find the mean and median. Which is more representative?
5. Test scores have mean 75 and standard deviation 8. Assuming normal distribution, approximately what percentage score between 59 and 91?

6. Two data sets have the same mean (50) but Set A has standard deviation 5 while Set B has standard deviation 15. Which set has more consistent values?

Problem Set C: Surveys and Sampling

7. A school wants to estimate average homework time. Which sampling method is best? A) Survey students in the library B) Email all students and use responses C) Randomly select 100 students from enrollment list D) Survey the honor roll students
8. A political poll of 1,000 voters shows 48% support \pm 3%. What can we conclude about true support?
9. Why might an online survey about internet usage overestimate average daily internet time?

Problem Set D: Probability

10. A jar has 4 red, 6 blue, and 5 green marbles. If two are drawn without replacement, what's P(both blue)?
11. In a class, 60% study math, 45% study science, and 30% study both. What's P(studies math or science)?
12. A multiple choice question has 5 options. If you eliminate 2 wrong answers and guess, what's P(correct)?

Answer Key

1. **2/3 or 66.7%** $P(\text{freshman} \mid \text{likes math}) = 40/60 = 2/3$
2. **26.7%** Below 70: $5 + 15 = 20$ students Percentage: $20/75 = 26.7\%$
3. **GPA = 2.8** $\text{GPA} = -0.2(5) + 3.8 = -1 + 3.8 = 2.8$
4. **Mean = \$419K, Median = \$325K** Mean = $(300+320+325+330+920)/5 = 419$ Median is more representative (less affected by \$920K outlier)

5. **95%** $59 = 75 - 2(8)$ and $91 = 75 + 2(8)$ About 95% within 2 standard deviations
6. **Set A** Smaller standard deviation means less spread, more consistency
7. **C** Random selection from complete list avoids bias
8. **True support likely between 45% and 51%** $48\% - 3\% = 45\%$, $48\% + 3\% = 51\%$
9. **Selection bias** Only people with internet access can respond, likely heavy users
10. $\frac{1}{7}$ $P(\text{first blue}) = \frac{6}{15}$ $P(\text{second blue} \mid \text{first blue}) = \frac{5}{14}$ $P(\text{both}) = \frac{6}{15} \times \frac{5}{14} = \frac{30}{210} = \frac{1}{7}$
11. **75%** $P(M \text{ or } S) = P(M) + P(S) - P(M \text{ and } S) = 0.60 + 0.45 - 0.30 = 0.75$
12. $\frac{1}{3}$ After eliminating 2, there are 3 choices left $P(\text{correct}) = \frac{1}{3}$

Key Takeaways

1. **Read carefully:** Many errors come from misreading tables or graphs
2. **Consider context:** Statistical measures mean nothing without interpretation
3. **Identify bias:** Real-world data collection is rarely perfect
4. **Think conditionally:** Many probability problems involve given conditions
5. **Check reasonableness:** Verify your answers make sense
6. **Practice interpretation:** The SAT emphasizes understanding over calculation

Remember, the SAT's Problem-Solving and Data Analysis questions test your ability to think critically about data in real-world contexts. Focus on understanding what the numbers mean, not just how to calculate them.

Scatterplots

Scatterplots are one of the most important data visualization tools tested on The SAT, appearing in approximately 10-15% of the Problem-Solving and Data Analysis questions. These graphs display the relationship between two quantitative variables, allowing us to identify patterns, trends, and correlations in real-world data.

The SAT emphasizes interpreting scatterplots in context, understanding lines of best fit, and using these models to make predictions and draw conclusions.

This chapter will prepare you to analyze scatterplots effectively, understand the mathematics behind linear regression, and apply these concepts to the types of problems you'll encounter on test day. You'll learn to distinguish between correlation and causation, interpret the strength of relationships, and use mathematical models to solve practical problems.

Understanding Scatterplots

A scatterplot displays paired data as points on a coordinate plane, with one variable on the x-axis (horizontal) and another on the y-axis (vertical). Each point represents one data pair, and the overall pattern of points reveals the relationship between the variables.

Components of a Scatterplot

Every scatterplot on the SAT will include:

1. **Title:** Describes what data is being displayed
2. **Axis labels:** Identify the variables and their units
3. **Scale:** Shows the range and intervals for each axis
4. **Data points:** Individual observations plotted as dots

Types of Relationships

The SAT tests your ability to identify and interpret different types of relationships in scatterplots:

Positive Linear Relationship: As x increases, y tends to increase

1. Points form an upward-sloping pattern
2. Example: Study time vs. test scores

Negative Linear Relationship: As x increases, y tends to decrease

1. Points form a downward-sloping pattern
2. Example: Price vs. demand for a product

No Relationship: No clear pattern between x and y

1. Points appear randomly scattered
2. Example: Shoe size vs. GPA

Nonlinear Relationship: Variables are related but not in a straight-line pattern

1. Points follow a curve or other non-linear pattern
2. Example: Age vs. reaction time (U-shaped curve)

Strength of Correlation

The SAT frequently asks about the strength of relationships:

Strong Correlation: Points cluster tightly around a clear pattern

Moderate Correlation: Points show a pattern but with more scatter

Weak Correlation: Points loosely follow a pattern with significant scatter

No Correlation: No discernible pattern

Outliers and Influential Points

An outlier is a data point that falls far from the overall pattern. The SAT tests your understanding of how outliers affect:

1. The line of best fit
2. The correlation strength
3. The reliability of predictions

Example: In a scatterplot of height vs. weight for adults, a professional bodybuilder might appear as an outlier with unusually high weight for their height.

Interpreting Context

The SAT emphasizes interpreting scatterplots in real-world contexts. Always consider:

1. What the variables represent
2. The units of measurement
3. Whether the relationship makes logical sense
4. Limitations of the data

Practice Problems - Understanding Scatterplots

1. A scatterplot shows the relationship between hours of sleep and reaction time in milliseconds. Most points follow a U-shaped pattern, with both very low and very high sleep amounts associated with slower reaction times. What type of relationship does this represent?
2. In a scatterplot of age (x-axis) vs. vocabulary size (y-axis) for children ages 2-10, would you expect a positive or negative correlation? Explain your reasoning.

3. A researcher plots daily temperature against ice cream sales. One data point shows high sales on a cold day. What might explain this outlier?

Line of Best Fit

The line of best fit (also called a regression line or trend line) is a straight line that best represents the relationship between two variables in a scatterplot. The SAT requires you to understand, interpret, and use these lines for prediction and analysis.

Understanding the Line of Best Fit

The line of best fit minimizes the overall distance between itself and all data points. Key characteristics:

1. Passes through or near the center of the data
2. Has roughly equal numbers of points above and below
3. Best represents the overall trend

Equation of the Line

The line of best fit has the equation: $y = mx + b$, where:

1. m = slope (rate of change)
2. b = y-intercept (value when $x = 0$)
3. x = independent variable
4. y = dependent variable

Interpreting the Slope

The slope represents the average change in y for each unit increase in x .

Example: A line of best fit for studying hours (x) vs. test score (y) has equation $y = 5x + 65$

Interpretation:

1. Slope = 5: Each additional hour of studying is associated with a 5-point increase in test score
2. Y-intercept = 65: A student who doesn't study ($x = 0$) would be predicted to score 65

Making Predictions

Use the line of best fit to predict y-values for given x-values (interpolation or extrapolation).

Example: Using $y = 5x + 65$, predict the test score for a student who studies 6 hours.

Solution:

$$y = 5(6) + 65$$

$$y = 30 + 65$$

$$y = 95$$

Limitations of Linear Models

The SAT tests your understanding of when linear models are appropriate:

Interpolation: Predicting within the range of observed data (generally reliable)

Extrapolation: Predicting outside the range of observed data (less reliable)

Example: If data covers ages 20-60, predicting for age 40 (interpolation) is more reliable than predicting for age 80 (extrapolation).

Residuals

A residual is the difference between an actual y-value and the predicted y-value from the line of best fit:

Residual = Actual y - Predicted y

1. Positive residual: Point is above the line
2. Negative residual: Point is below the line
3. Zero residual: Point is on the line

Assessing Fit Quality

The SAT may ask you to evaluate how well a line fits the data:

1. **Good fit:** Residuals are small and randomly distributed
2. **Poor fit:** Residuals show a pattern or are consistently large
3. **R-squared value:** Closer to 1 indicates better fit (when provided)

Finding the Line of Best Fit

While the SAT won't require you to calculate the line of best fit by hand, you should understand the process:

1. Plot the data points
2. Draw a line that minimizes the overall distance to all points
3. Estimate the slope using two points on your line
4. Find the y-intercept

Example: Estimate the line of best fit for these points: (1, 3), (2, 5), (3, 6), (4, 8), (5, 10)

Visual inspection suggests a line passing through approximately (1, 3) and (5, 10):

$$\text{Slope} = (10 - 3)/(5 - 1) = 7/4 = 1.75$$

$$\text{Using point (1, 3): } 3 = 1.75(1) + b$$

$$b = 3 - 1.75 = 1.25$$

Equation: $y = 1.75x + 1.25$

Practice Problems - Line of Best Fit

1. A line of best fit for age (x) in years vs. height (y) in inches for children has equation $y = 2.5x + 30$. What does the slope represent in this context?
2. Using the equation from problem 1, predict the height of a 10-year-old child. Is this interpolation or extrapolation if the data covered ages 2-12?
3. If a 7-year-old child in the study is 50 inches tall, what is the residual for this data point?

Scatterplot Modeling

The SAT emphasizes using scatterplots and their associated models to solve real-world problems. This section covers advanced applications and the types of modeling questions you'll encounter on the test.

Choosing Appropriate Models

Not all relationships are linear. The SAT may present scatterplots that suggest different types of models:

Linear Model: $y = mx + b$

1. Use when points follow a straight-line pattern
2. Constant rate of change

Quadratic Model: $y = ax^2 + bx + c$

1. Use for parabolic patterns
2. One turning point (maximum or minimum)

Exponential Model: $y = ab^x$

1. Use for rapid growth or decay

2. Constant percent change

Correlation vs. Causation

The SAT frequently tests your understanding of this crucial distinction:

1. **Correlation:** Two variables tend to change together
2. **Causation:** Changes in one variable directly cause changes in another

Example: A scatterplot shows a positive correlation between ice cream sales and drowning incidents. This doesn't mean ice cream causes drowning; both are likely influenced by warm weather (a confounding variable).

Multiple Variables and Confounding Factors

Real-world scenarios often involve multiple variables that can affect the relationship shown in a scatterplot:

Example: A study shows a negative correlation between class size and student achievement. Potential confounding factors might include:

1. School funding (smaller classes often in better-funded schools)
2. Teacher experience
3. Socioeconomic factors

Transforming Data

Sometimes the SAT presents scatterplots of transformed data to reveal linear relationships:

Example: Population growth often follows an exponential pattern. Taking the logarithm of population values can transform the curved pattern into a linear one, making it easier to analyze.

Using Models for Decision Making

The SAT tests your ability to use scatterplot models to make practical decisions:

Example: A company studies the relationship between advertising spending (x , in thousands of dollars) and monthly sales (y , in thousands of units). The line of best fit is $y = 3x + 50$.

Questions might include:

1. What sales can be expected with \$20,000 in advertising?
2. How much should be spent to achieve sales of 200,000 units?
3. What is the break-even point if each unit yields \$2 profit?

Solution for break-even:

$$\text{Revenue per month} = 2y \text{ thousand dollars} = 2(3x + 50) = 6x + 100$$

$$\text{Cost per month} = x \text{ thousand dollars (advertising)}$$

$$\text{Break-even: } 6x + 100 = x$$

$$5x = -100$$

This model suggests no break-even point, indicating other costs need consideration

Comparing Models

The SAT may ask you to compare different models or datasets:

Example: Two tutoring companies show their students' improvement:

1. Company A: $y = 2x + 70$ (x = weeks, y = test score)
2. Company B: $y = 3x + 65$

Analysis:

1. Company B shows faster improvement (higher slope)
2. Company A starts with higher initial scores

3. They perform equally at $x = 5$ weeks

Real-World Applications

Common contexts for scatterplot modeling on the SAT:

Scientific Research

1. Temperature vs. reaction rate
2. Dosage vs. treatment effectiveness
3. Time vs. bacterial growth

Economics and Business

1. Supply and demand relationships
2. Cost vs. production volume
3. Experience vs. salary

Social Sciences

1. Education level vs. income
2. Population density vs. crime rate
3. Age vs. political participation

Environmental Studies

1. CO₂ levels vs. temperature
2. Urbanization vs. biodiversity
3. Rainfall vs. crop yield

Technology and Calculator Use

The SAT allows calculator use for these sections. Key calculator functions:

1. Entering data points
2. Calculating regression equations
3. Finding correlation coefficients
4. Making predictions

However, understanding concepts is more important than calculator proficiency.

Practice Problems - Scatterplot Modeling

1. A scatterplot shows the relationship between years of education (x) and annual income in thousands (y). The line of best fit is $y = 8x + 25$. a) Interpret the slope and y-intercept in context b) Predict the income for someone with 16 years of education c) If someone needs an income of \$100,000, how many years of education does the model suggest?
2. Two different studies examine the relationship between exercise hours per week and resting heart rate:
 - Study A: $y = -3x + 75$
 - Study B: $y = -2x + 70$ Which study suggests exercise has a greater effect on heart rate? Explain.
3. A scatterplot of tree age vs. height shows a curved pattern that levels off for older trees. Would a linear model be appropriate? What type of model might better represent this relationship?

Chapter Summary

Scatterplots are powerful tools for understanding relationships between variables, and mastering their interpretation is essential for success on The SAT. Remember these key concepts:

Understanding Scatterplots

1. Identify the type and strength of relationships

2. Recognize outliers and their effects
3. Always interpret in context

Line of Best Fit

1. Represents the average relationship between variables
2. Use equation $y = mx + b$ for predictions
3. Understand limitations of linear models
4. Calculate and interpret residuals

Scatterplot Modeling

1. Choose appropriate models for the data pattern
2. Distinguish correlation from causation
3. Consider confounding variables
4. Apply models to solve real-world problems

The SAT emphasizes practical applications and critical thinking about data relationships. Success requires both mathematical skills and the ability to interpret results in meaningful contexts.

Quick Reference Guide

Types of Relationships

1. **Positive linear:** Upward sloping pattern
2. **Negative linear:** Downward sloping pattern
3. **No relationship:** Random scatter
4. **Nonlinear:** Curved patterns

Line of Best Fit Checklist

1. Equation form: $y = mx + b$
2. Slope = average change in y per unit of x
3. Y-intercept = predicted y when $x = 0$
4. Use for predictions within data range

Key Vocabulary

1. **Correlation:** Relationship between variables
2. **Residual:** Actual y - Predicted y
3. **Interpolation:** Predicting within data range
4. **Extrapolation:** Predicting outside data range
5. **Outlier:** Point far from the pattern

Common Mistakes to Avoid

1. Assuming correlation implies causation
2. Over-interpreting weak correlations
3. Extrapolating too far beyond data
4. Ignoring units and context
5. Misreading axis labels or scales

SAT Advanced Math

Absolute Value and Nonlinear Functions

While linear relationships form the foundation of algebra, the real world is full of phenomena that don't follow straight-line patterns. Population growth accelerates exponentially, projectiles follow parabolic paths, and distances are always positive regardless of direction. This chapter explores absolute value and nonlinear functions—essential tools for modeling these more complex relationships.

The SAT tests these concepts not just in isolation, but integrated with real-world contexts. You'll encounter absolute value in problems about distance, tolerance ranges, and deviations from expected values. Nonlinear functions appear in questions about area, volume, compound interest, and scientific relationships. Mastering these concepts opens the door to understanding the sophisticated mathematics used in fields from economics to engineering.

Part A: Absolute Value

Absolute value represents distance from zero on the number line, always yielding a non-negative result. While the concept seems simple, the SAT tests it in increasingly sophisticated ways.

Understanding Absolute Value

The absolute value of a number x , written $|x|$, is defined as:

- $|x| = x$ if $x \geq 0$
- $|x| = -x$ if $x < 0$

This definition leads to several key properties:

- $|x| \geq 0$ for all real numbers x
- $|x| = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$

- $|-x| = |x|$
- $|xy| = |x| \times |y|$
- $|x/y| = |x| / |y|$ (where $y \neq 0$)

Example: Evaluate each expression:

- $|7| = 7$
- $|-7| = 7$
- $|0| = 0$
- $-(-5) = |5| = 5$

Absolute Value Equations

Solving equations involving absolute value requires considering multiple cases.

Basic Absolute Value Equations

For $|x| = a$ where $a > 0$, there are two solutions: $x = a$ or $x = -a$

Example: Solve $|x - 3| = 5$

Solution: Case 1: $x - 3 = 5$

- $x = 8$

Case 2: $x - 3 = -5$

- $x = -2$

Check: $|8 - 3| = |5| = 5$ ✓ and $|-2 - 3| = |-5| = 5$ ✓

Absolute Value Equations with No Solution

If $|\text{expression}| = \text{negative number}$, there is no solution since absolute value is never negative.

Example: Solve $|2x + 1| = -3$

Solution: No solution, since absolute value cannot equal a negative number.

Absolute Value Equations with One Solution

When the expression inside equals zero.

Example: Solve $|3x - 12| = 0$

Solution: $3x - 12 = 0$ $x = 4$

This is the only solution since $|\text{expression}| = 0$ only when $\text{expression} = 0$.

Complex Absolute Value Equations

The SAT often presents equations with absolute value on both sides or multiple absolute value expressions.

Example: Solve $|x - 2| = |2x + 1|$

Solution: This means either:

- $(x - 2) = (2x + 1)$, or
- $(x - 2) = -(2x + 1)$

Case 1: $x - 2 = 2x + 1$

- $-x = 3$
- $x = -3$

Case 2: $x - 2 = -2x - 1$

- $3x = 1$
- $x = 1/3$

Check both solutions in the original equation.

Absolute Value Inequalities

Inequalities involving absolute value have solution sets that are intervals or unions of intervals.

Less Than Inequalities

For $|x| < a$ where $a > 0$: $-a < x < a$

Example: Solve $|x - 4| < 3$

Solution: $-3 < x - 4 < 3$ $1 < x < 7$

The solution is the interval $(1, 7)$.

Greater Than Inequalities

For $|x| > a$ where $a > 0$: $x < -a$ or $x > a$

Example: Solve $|2x + 6| > 8$

Solution: $2x + 6 < -8$ or $2x + 6 > 8$ $2x < -14$ or $2x > 2$ $x < -7$ or $x > 1$

The solution is $(-\infty, -7) \cup (1, \infty)$.

Absolute Value in Word Problems

The SAT frequently uses absolute value to model real-world situations involving distance, error, or deviation.

Example: A manufacturing process produces bolts with a target diameter of 10 mm. Quality control accepts bolts whose diameter d satisfies $|d - 10| \leq 0.2$. What is the range of acceptable diameters?

Solution: $|d - 10| \leq 0.2$ $-0.2 \leq d - 10 \leq 0.2$ $9.8 \leq d \leq 10.2$

Acceptable diameters range from 9.8 mm to 10.2 mm.

Graphing Absolute Value Functions

The basic absolute value function $f(x) = |x|$ creates a V-shaped graph with vertex at the origin.

Transformations of Absolute Value Functions

The general form is $f(x) = a|x - h| + k$ where:

- h shifts the graph horizontally (vertex x-coordinate)
- k shifts the graph vertically (vertex y-coordinate)
- a affects the slope and direction (negative a reflects over x-axis)

Example: Graph $f(x) = -2|x - 3| + 5$

Solution:

- Vertex at $(3, 5)$
- Opens downward (since $a = -2 < 0$)
- Slopes are ± 2 (steeper than basic absolute value)

Distance Applications

Absolute value naturally represents distance on a number line.

Example: On a number line, point A is at position -3 and point B is at position 5. Express the distance between any point x and the midpoint of AB using absolute value.

Solution:

- Midpoint of AB $= (-3 + 5)/2 = 1$
- Distance from x to midpoint $= |x - 1|$

Part B: Nonlinear Functions

Nonlinear functions model relationships where the rate of change is not constant. The SAT focuses on several key types: quadratic, exponential, and polynomial functions.

Quadratic Functions

Quadratic functions have the form $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ where $a \neq 0$. They create parabolic graphs and model many physical phenomena.

Forms of Quadratic Functions

Standard Form: $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$

- Useful for identifying y-intercept (c)
- Axis of symmetry: $x = -b/(2a)$

Vertex Form: $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$

- Vertex is at (h, k)
- Useful for graphing and finding maximum/minimum

Factored Form: $f(x) = a(x - r_1)(x - r_2)$

- r_1 and r_2 are the x-intercepts (roots)
- Useful for solving $f(x) = 0$

Converting Between Forms

Example: Convert $f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 5$ to vertex form.

Solution by completing the square: $f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 5$
 $f(x) = (x^2 - 6x + 9) - 9 + 5$
 $f(x) = (x - 3)^2 - 4$

Vertex is at $(3, -4)$.

The Discriminant

For $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, the discriminant $D = b^2 - 4ac$ determines the nature of solutions:

- $D > 0$: Two distinct real solutions
- $D = 0$: One repeated real solution
- $D < 0$: No real solutions (two complex solutions)

Example: How many x-intercepts does $f(x) = 2x^2 - 4x + 3$ have?

Solution: $D = (-4)^2 - 4(2)(3) = 16 - 24 = -8$ Since $D < 0$, the parabola has no x-intercepts.

Exponential Functions

Exponential functions have the form $f(x) = a \cdot b^x$ where $a \neq 0$ and $b > 0, b \neq 1$.

Exponential Growth vs. Decay

- If $b > 1$: Exponential growth
- If $0 < b < 1$: Exponential decay

Example: A bacteria culture starts with 100 organisms and doubles every 3 hours. Write a function for the population after t hours.

Solution:

- Initial population: $a = 100$
- Doubles every 3 hours: $b^3 = 2$, so $b = 2^{(1/3)}$
- Function: $P(t) = 100 \cdot 2^{(t/3)}$

Properties of Exponential Functions

Key characteristics:

- Domain: All real numbers
- Range: $(0, \infty)$ if $a > 0$
- y-intercept: $(0, a)$
- Horizontal asymptote: $y = 0$
- Always increasing if $b > 1$, always decreasing if $0 < b < 1$

Polynomial Functions

Polynomial functions have the form $f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$ where n is a non-negative integer.

Degree and Leading Coefficient

The degree (highest power) and leading coefficient determine end behavior:

- Even degree, positive leading coefficient: Both ends up
- Even degree, negative leading coefficient: Both ends down
- Odd degree, positive leading coefficient: Left down, right up
- Odd degree, negative leading coefficient: Left up, right down

Example: Describe the end behavior of $f(x) = -2x^3 + 5x^2 - x + 7$

Solution: Degree 3 (odd), leading coefficient -2 (negative) As $x \rightarrow -\infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow +\infty$ As $x \rightarrow +\infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow -\infty$

Zeros and Factors

The Factor Theorem states: $(x - r)$ is a factor of $f(x)$ if and only if $f(r) = 0$.

Example: Given that $f(x) = x^3 - 4x^2 - 7x + 10$ has a zero at $x = 5$, find the other zeros.

Solution: Since $f(5) = 0$, $(x - 5)$ is a factor. Using polynomial division: $x^3 - 4x^2 - 7x + 10 = (x - 5)(x^2 + x - 2) = (x - 5)(x + 2)(x - 1)$

The zeros are $x = 5$, $x = -2$, and $x = 1$.

Transformations of Nonlinear Functions

Understanding how changes to the equation affect the graph is crucial for the SAT.

Vertical Transformations

- $f(x) + k$: Shifts graph up by k units
- $f(x) - k$: Shifts graph down by k units
- $af(x)$: Stretches vertically by factor $|a|$ (reflects if $a < 0$)

Horizontal Transformations

- $f(x - h)$: Shifts graph right by h units
- $f(x + h)$: Shifts graph left by h units
- $f(bx)$: Compresses horizontally by factor $|b|$ if $|b| > 1$

Example: How does the graph of $g(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 1$ compare to $f(x) = x^2$?

Solution: Starting from $f(x) = x^2$:

- Shift right 3 units
- Stretch vertically by factor 2
- Shift up 1 unit Result: Vertex at $(3, 1)$, narrower than original parabola

Composite Functions

The composition of functions, written $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$, appears frequently on the SAT.

Example: If $f(x) = x^2 + 1$ and $g(x) = 2x - 3$, find $(f \circ g)(x)$.

Solution: $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = f(2x - 3) = (2x - 3)^2 + 1 = 4x^2 - 12x + 9 + 1 = 4x^2 - 12x + 10$

Inverse Functions

Functions have inverses when they are one-to-one (pass the horizontal line test).

Finding Inverse Functions

To find $f^{-1}(x)$:

1. Write $y = f(x)$
2. Swap x and y
3. Solve for y
4. The result is $f^{-1}(x)$

Example: Find the inverse of $f(x) = 2x + 3$.

Solution: $y = 2x + 3$ $x = 2y + 3$ (swap variables) $x - 3 = 2y$ $y = (x - 3)/2$

Therefore, $f^{-1}(x) = (x - 3)/2$

Piecewise Functions

Piecewise functions use different rules for different parts of their domain.

Example: Parking costs \$5 for the first 2 hours and \$3 for each additional hour. Write a piecewise function for the cost $C(t)$ for t hours.

Solution: $C(t) = \{ 5, \text{ if } 0 < t \leq 2 \quad 5 + 3(t-2), \text{ if } t > 2 \}$

Applications of Nonlinear Functions

Area and Volume Problems

Many geometric relationships are nonlinear.

Example: A square garden has sides of length x feet. If the sides are increased by 3 feet, by how much does the area increase?

Solution:

- Original area: x^2
- New area: $(x + 3)^2$
- Increase: $(x + 3)^2 - x^2 = x^2 + 6x + 9 - x^2 = 6x + 9$ square feet

Optimization Problems

Finding maximum or minimum values of quadratic functions.

Example: A ball is thrown upward with initial velocity 48 ft/s from a height of 64 ft. Its height after t seconds is $h(t) = -16t^2 + 48t + 64$. Find the maximum height.

Solution: The vertex gives the maximum for this downward-opening parabola. $t = -b/(2a) = -48/(2(-16)) = 1.5$ seconds Maximum height: $h(1.5) = -16(1.5)^2 + 48(1.5) + 64 = 100$ feet

Growth and Decay Models

Exponential functions model many real-world phenomena.

Example: A medication has a half-life of 6 hours. If a patient takes 200 mg, write a function for the amount $A(t)$ remaining after t hours.

Solution: Using $A(t) = A_0 \cdot (1/2)^{(t/h)}$ where h is the half-life: $A(t) = 200 \cdot (1/2)^{(t/6)}$ mg

Systems Involving Nonlinear Functions

The SAT may ask you to solve systems with one or more nonlinear equations.

Example: Find the intersection points of $y = x^2 - 4$ and $y = 2x - 1$.

Solution: Set equal: $x^2 - 4 = 2x - 1$ $x^2 - 2x - 3 = 0$ $(x - 3)(x + 1) = 0$ $x = 3$ or $x = -1$

When $x = 3$: $y = 2(3) - 1 = 5$ When $x = -1$: $y = 2(-1) - 1 = -3$

Intersection points: $(3, 5)$ and $(-1, -3)$

Practice Problems

Absolute Value Problems

1. Solve $|2x - 5| = |x + 1|$
2. Find all values of x for which $|x - 3| + |x + 2| = 7$
3. A thermostat is set to 72°F with a tolerance of 3°F . Write and solve an absolute value inequality to find the acceptable temperature range.
4. Graph $f(x) = |x + 2| - 3$ and identify its vertex and x -intercepts.

Nonlinear Function Problems

5. Convert $f(x) = 2x^2 + 8x + 3$ to vertex form and identify the vertex.
6. A population of insects grows according to $P(t) = 50 \cdot 3^{(t/2)}$, where t is in days. How long until the population reaches 1,350?
7. Find all zeros of $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 6$, given that $(x - 3)$ is a factor.
8. If $f(x) = x^2 - 4$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{x + 4}$, find $(g \circ f)(5)$.

Mixed Problems

9. The profit function for selling x items is $P(x) = -2x^2 + 80x - 750$. How many items should be sold to maximize profit?

10. Solve the system: $y = x^2 - 6x + 8$ $y = |x - 3| - 1$

Solutions

1. **$x = 4$ or $x = -2$** Case 1: $2x - 5 = x + 1 \rightarrow x = 6$ Case 2: $2x - 5 = -(x + 1) \rightarrow 3x = 4 \rightarrow x = 4/3$ Recalculate: Case 1: $2x - 5 = x + 1 \rightarrow x = 6$ Case 2: $2x - 5 = -(x + 1) \rightarrow 2x - 5 = -x - 1 \rightarrow 3x = 4 \rightarrow x = 4/3$ Check: $|2(6) - 5| = |7| = 7$ and $|6 + 1| = 7$ ✓ $|2(4/3) - 5| = |-7/3| = 7/3$ and $|4/3 + 1| = |7/3| = 7/3$ ✓
2. **$x = -3$ or $x = 4$** Consider cases based on critical points $x = -2$ and $x = 3$:
 - If $x < -2$: $-(x - 3) - (x + 2) = 7 \rightarrow -2x + 1 = 7 \rightarrow x = -3$
 - If $-2 \leq x \leq 3$: $-(x - 3) + (x + 2) = 7 \rightarrow 5 = 7$ (no solution)
 - If $x > 3$: $(x - 3) + (x + 2) = 7 \rightarrow 2x - 1 = 7 \rightarrow x = 4$
3. **$69^\circ\text{F} \leq T \leq 75^\circ\text{F}$** $|T - 72| \leq 3$ $-3 \leq T - 72 \leq 3$ $69 \leq T \leq 75$
4. **Vertex: $(-2, -3)$; x-intercepts: $(-5, 0)$ and $(1, 0)$** The vertex of $|x + 2|$ is at $x = -2$, shifted down 3 units to $(-2, -3)$ For x-intercepts: $|x + 2| - 3 = 0 \rightarrow |x + 2| = 3$ $x + 2 = 3$ or $x + 2 = -3$ $x = 1$ or $x = -5$
5. **$f(x) = 2(x + 2)^2 - 5$; Vertex: $(-2, -5)$** $f(x) = 2x^2 + 8x + 3 = 2(x^2 + 4x) + 3 = 2(x^2 + 4x + 4 - 4) + 3 = 2(x + 2)^2 - 8 + 3 = 2(x + 2)^2 - 5$
6. **$t = 4$ days** $50 \cdot 3^{(t/2)} = 1,350$ $3^{(t/2)} = 27$ $3^{(t/2)} = 3^3$ $t/2 = 3$ $t = 6$ days
7. **Zeros: $x = 3$, $x = -2$, $x = 1$** Using division by $(x - 3)$: $x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 3)(x^2 + x - 2) = (x - 3)(x + 2)(x - 1)$
8. **$(g \circ f)(5) = 5$** First find $f(5) = 5^2 - 4 = 21$ Then $g(21) = \sqrt{(21 + 4)} = \sqrt{25} = 5$
9. **20 items** For maximum, use $x = -b/(2a) = -80/(2(-2)) = 20$ Maximum profit: $P(20) = -2(400) + 80(20) - 750 = 50$
10. **Solutions: $(1, 3)$, $(2, 0)$, $(4, 0)$, $(5, 3)$** The parabola $y = x^2 - 6x + 8 = (x - 2)(x - 4)$ has vertex at $(3, -1)$ The V-shape $y = |x - 3| - 1$ has vertex at $(3, -1)$ They share the vertex and intersect where: $x^2 - 6x + 8 = |x - 3| - 1$ For $x \geq 3$:

$x^2 - 6x + 8 = x - 3 - 1 \rightarrow x^2 - 7x + 12 = 0 \rightarrow x = 3$ or $x = 4$ For $x < 3$: $x^2 - 6x + 8 = -(x - 3) - 1 \rightarrow x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0 \rightarrow x = 2$ or $x = 3$ Check each: (2, 0), (3, -1), (4, 0)

Key Concepts Summary

Absolute Value

- Represents distance from zero
- Creates V-shaped graphs
- Equations may have 0, 1, or 2 solutions
- Inequalities create intervals or unions of intervals
- Models real-world tolerance and deviation

Nonlinear Functions

- Quadratics: Parabolic shape, vertex form reveals key features
- Exponentials: Constant percentage change, never touch x-axis
- Polynomials: Degree determines end behavior
- Transformations: Understand shifts, stretches, and reflections
- Applications: Optimization, growth/decay, geometric relationships

Problem-Solving Strategies

- Consider multiple cases for absolute value
- Use appropriate form for quadratics
- Identify function type from context
- Check solutions in original equations

- Sketch graphs to visualize relationships

Mastering absolute value and nonlinear functions expands your mathematical toolkit significantly. These concepts allow you to model and solve problems that linear functions cannot handle, from projectile motion to population dynamics.

On the SAT, expect to see these functions both in pure mathematics questions and applied contexts across science and social science scenarios.

Exponents, Radicals, Polynomials and Rational Expressions

Exponents

Exponents are fundamental to SAT Advanced Math, appearing in various contexts from scientific notation to exponential growth models. Understanding the rules of exponents is crucial for success on the digital SAT.

Core Exponent Rules

Product Rule:

When multiplying terms with the same base, you keep the base and **add the exponents**.

Example: $x^3 * x^5$ becomes x^8 .

Quotient Rule:

When dividing terms with the same base, you **subtract the exponents**.

Example: $y^7 \div y^2$ becomes y^5 .

Power Rule:

When raising a power to another power, you **multiply the exponents**.

Example: $(x^3)^4$ becomes x^{12} .

Zero and Negative Exponents

- Any **nonzero number raised to the zero power** equals 1.
Example: $x^0 = 1$ as long as $x \neq 0$.
- A **negative exponent** means the reciprocal of the positive power.
Example: $2^{-3} = 1/8$ and $x^{-2} = 1/x^2$.

- **Fractional Exponents**

- A **fractional exponent** represents a root.
- For example, $x^{(1/2)}$ is the same as the **square root of x**, and $x^{(3/2)}$ means take the **square root of x** and then **cube** it.
These forms are often used to switch between radicals and exponent notation.

- **SAT Example – Exponents**

If $2^x = 8$ and $3^y = 81$, then:

- Since $8 = 2^3$, we know $x = 3$.
- Since $81 = 3^4$, we know $y = 4$.
So $x + y = 7$.

- **Radicals**

Radicals show up often on the SAT, especially in geometry and algebra questions.

Simplifying Radicals:

Break the number under the radical into factors, and pull out any **perfect square** factors.

Example: $\sqrt{48}$ becomes $\sqrt{(16 \times 3)}$, and since $\sqrt{16} = 4$, the simplified form is $4\sqrt{3}$.

Product Property:

You can split the square root of a product into the product of two square roots:

$$\sqrt{a \times b} = \sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b}.$$

Quotient Property:

You can also split a square root of a fraction into the square root of the top over the square root of the bottom:

$$\sqrt{a / b} = \sqrt{a} / \sqrt{b}.$$

Rationalizing Denominators

If you have a **square root in the denominator**, multiply by a form of 1 to eliminate it.

Example:

$1 / \sqrt{3}$ becomes $(\sqrt{3} / 3)$ after multiplying top and bottom by $\sqrt{3}$.

If the denominator has two terms like $2 + \sqrt{3}$, multiply by the **conjugate**, which is $2 - \sqrt{3}$.

Doing this turns the denominator into a whole number and simplifies the expression.

Operations with Radicals

You can only **add or subtract radicals** if they have the same value under the radical.

Example:

$$3\sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{5} = 5\sqrt{5},$$

but $\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{5}$ can't be simplified further.

SAT Example:

Simplify $\sqrt{50} + \sqrt{32} - \sqrt{8}$

- $\sqrt{50} = 5\sqrt{2}$
- $\sqrt{32} = 4\sqrt{2}$

- $\sqrt{8} = 2\sqrt{2}$

So the expression becomes: $5\sqrt{2} + 4\sqrt{2} - 2\sqrt{2} = 7\sqrt{2}$

Polynomials

A polynomial is an expression made of variables and constants using **only addition, subtraction, multiplication, and non-negative whole number exponents**.

Example: $ax^2 + bx + c$ is a quadratic polynomial.

Polynomial Operations

- **Adding or subtracting:** Combine like terms.
- **Multiplying:** Use distributive property to multiply each term carefully.

Example:

Multiply $(x^2 + 3x - 2)$ by $(x - 4)$

Step-by-step:

$$x^2 * x = x^3$$

$$x^2 * (-4) = -4x^2$$

$$3x * x = 3x^2$$

$$3x * (-4) = -12x$$

$$-2 * x = -2x$$

$$-2 * (-4) = +8$$

Now combine: $x^3 - x^2 - 14x + 8$

Special Forms to Recognize

- **Difference of squares:** $a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$
- **Perfect square trinomial:** $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 = (a + b)^2$
- **Sum or difference of cubes:**
 $a^3 \pm b^3 = (a \pm b)(a^2 \mp ab + b^2)$

Zeros and Factors

If a value a makes $P(a) = 0$, then $(x - a)$ is a **factor** of the polynomial. This is known as the **Factor Theorem**.

SAT Example:

Given $P(x) = x^3 - 6x^2 + 11x - 6$, and $P(1) = 0$:

Factor out $(x - 1)$ using division to get:

$$P(x) = (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 3)$$

Polynomial Division

Long Division:

Divide terms one by one, just like with numbers.

At the end: $P(x) = D(x) \times Q(x) + R(x)$

Where $D(x)$ is the divisor, $Q(x)$ the quotient, and $R(x)$ the remainder.

Synthetic Division:

Use when dividing by something like $x - 3$. It's quicker and great for finding remainders.

Remainder Theorem:

When a polynomial is divided by $x - c$, the **remainder is $P(c)$** .

SAT Example:

Find the remainder of $x^3 + 2x^2 - 5x + 1$ divided by $x - 2$:

Plug in 2:

$$8 + 8 - 10 + 1 = 7. \text{ So, remainder} = 7.$$

Graphs of Polynomial Functions

End Behavior:

- If the highest power is **even** and the coefficient is **positive**, both ends go **up**.
- If it's even and **negative**, both go **down**.

- If the power is **odd** and **positive**, the graph falls left and rises right.
- If it's odd and **negative**, the graph rises left and falls right.

Multiplicity of Zeros:

- If the zero has **odd multiplicity**, the graph crosses the x-axis.
- If it has **even multiplicity**, the graph touches and turns around at that point.

Transformations:

- Adding outside the function: moves the graph **up or down**.
- Subtracting inside the function: shifts **left or right**.
- Multiplying the whole function: **stretches or compresses vertically**.
- Multiplying the input: **compresses or stretches horizontally**.

SAT Example – Polynomial from Roots:

A polynomial has zeros at $x = -2$ (appears twice) and $x = 3$.

If $P(0) = 12$, we start with: $P(x) = a(x + 2)^2(x - 3)$

Substitute 0: $12 = a(4)(-3) = -12a$, so $a = -1$.

Final form: $P(x) = -(x + 2)^2(x - 3)$

Modeling Growth and Decay

Exponential Growth:

Used when values increase over time.

Formula: final amount = initial amount \times (1 + growth rate) to the power of time.

Exponential Decay:

Used when values decrease.

Formula: final amount = initial amount \times (1 - decay rate) to the power of time.

Compound Interest:

Money grows based on interest rate and how often it compounds.

Involves principal amount, interest rate, time, and compounding frequency.

Half-Life Problems:

Used in decay models like radioactive substances.

After each half-life, half of the material remains.

Formula: $\text{final} = \text{initial} \times (1/2)^{\text{time} \div \text{half-life}}$.

SAT Example:

A bacteria culture **doubles every 3 hours** and starts with 500.

To find the amount after 10 hours:

Use $500 \times 2^{(10 \div 3)} \approx 500 \times 10.08 \approx 5040$ bacteria.

Rational Expressions and Equations

Simplifying:

Factor both top and bottom, cancel shared factors.

Always state **excluded values** that make the denominator zero.

Operations:

- For addition and subtraction: get a common denominator.
- For multiplication: multiply top and bottom directly.
- For division: flip the second fraction and multiply.

Solving Rational Equations:

1. Find the least common denominator (LCD).
2. Multiply everything by the LCD to eliminate fractions.
3. Solve and **check** that your solution doesn't make any denominator zero.

Complex Fractions:

Multiply top and bottom by the LCD of all small fractions to simplify.

SAT Example:

Solve: $2 / (x - 3) + 1 / (x + 2) = 3 / [(x - 3)(x + 2)]$

Multiply through by $(x - 3)(x + 2)$ to clear denominators:

Gives: $2(x + 2) + 1(x - 3) = 3$

Simplify to get: $3x + 1 = 3 \rightarrow x = 2/3$

Check that $2/3$ doesn't make any denominator zero—it's valid.

Key Strategies for SAT Success

Recognition Patterns

Train yourself to recognize standard forms quickly. Whether it's a difference of squares, a perfect square trinomial, or an exponential growth scenario, pattern recognition saves valuable time.

Check Your Work

For polynomial and rational problems, substitution provides a quick check. For exponential problems, verify that your answer makes sense in context.

Domain Awareness

Always consider domain restrictions, especially with rational expressions and even roots. The SAT often includes problems where domain considerations affect the answer.

Calculator Usage

While the calculator can verify answers, understanding the algebraic approach is crucial. Many SAT problems are designed to be solved more efficiently without a calculator.

Time Management

Practice identifying which problems require full solutions versus those that can be solved through recognition or shortcuts. The digital SAT rewards efficiency alongside accuracy.

This comprehensive understanding of exponents, radicals, polynomials, and rational expressions forms a crucial foundation for success on the SAT Advanced Math section.

Regular practice with these concepts, combined with strategic problem-solving approaches, will help you navigate even the most challenging questions with confidence.

Quadratics

Quadratic equations and functions represent one of the most important topics in SAT Advanced Math, appearing in approximately 20-25% of the advanced math questions. This chapter will provide you with a complete toolkit for handling quadratics, from basic factoring to complex systems involving quadratic and linear equations.

The SAT emphasizes the connections between algebraic manipulation, graphical interpretation, and real-world modeling, so we'll explore all these aspects thoroughly.

Understanding Quadratic Equations

A quadratic equation is a polynomial equation of degree 2, typically written in standard form as:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

where $a \neq 0$ (if $a = 0$, it becomes linear)

Key characteristics:

- The highest power of the variable is 2
- The graph is a parabola
- Can have 0, 1, or 2 real solutions
- Solutions are also called roots, zeros, or x-intercepts

Solving Quadratics by Factoring

Factoring is often the fastest method when the quadratic has integer solutions. The goal is to rewrite the quadratic as a product of linear factors.

Basic Factoring Pattern

For $x^2 + bx + c = 0$, find two numbers that:

- Multiply to give c
- Add to give b

Example: Simple Factoring

Solve: $x^2 + 7x + 12 = 0$

Solution: Find factors of 12 that add to 7:

- $1 \times 12 = 12$, but $1 + 12 = 13$ ✗
- $2 \times 6 = 12$, but $2 + 6 = 8$ ✗
- $3 \times 4 = 12$, and $3 + 4 = 7$ ✓

Therefore: $x^2 + 7x + 12 = (x + 3)(x + 4) = 0$ Setting each factor to zero: $x = -3$ or $x = -4$

Factoring with Leading Coefficient

When $a \neq 1$, the process requires more care.

Example: Leading Coefficient Greater Than 1

Solve: $2x^2 + 5x - 3 = 0$

Solution: Method: Find factors of ac that differ by b

- $a \times c = 2 \times (-3) = -6$

- Need factors of -6 that differ by 5
- 6 and -1 work: $6 - (-1) = 7$ ✗
- -6 and 1 work: $1 - (-6) = 7$ ✗
- 3 and -2 work: $3 - (-2) = 5$ ✓

Rewrite: $2x^2 + 6x - x - 3 = 0$ Factor by grouping: $2x(x + 3) - 1(x + 3) = 0$ Factor out $(x + 3)$: $(x + 3)(2x - 1) = 0$ Solutions: $x = -3$ or $x = 1/2$

Difference of Squares

Special pattern: $a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$

Example: Difference of Squares

Solve: $4x^2 - 25 = 0$

Solution: Recognize as $(2x)^2 - 5^2$ Factor: $(2x + 5)(2x - 5) = 0$ Solutions: $x = -5/2$ or $x = 5/2$

Perfect Square Trinomials

Pattern: $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 = (a + b)^2$

Example: Perfect Square Trinomial

Solve: $x^2 - 10x + 25 = 0$

Solution: Recognize as $x^2 - 2(5)(x) + 5^2$ Factor: $(x - 5)^2 = 0$ Solution: $x = 5$ (repeated root)

Classic Quadratics

The SAT frequently uses certain quadratic patterns that you should recognize instantly.

Sum and Product of Roots

For $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ with roots r and s :

- Sum of roots: $r + s = -b/a$
- Product of roots: $rs = c/a$

Example: Using Sum and Product

A quadratic equation has roots 3 and -7. What is the equation?

Solution: Sum: $3 + (-7) = -4$ Product: $3 \times (-7) = -21$

The equation is: $x^2 - (\text{sum})x + (\text{product}) = 0$ $x^2 - (-4)x + (-21) = 0$ $x^2 + 4x - 21 = 0$

Vieta's Formulas Application

Example: Finding Root Relationships

If $x^2 - 6x + k = 0$ has two equal roots, find k .

Solution: For equal roots, the discriminant must equal zero. $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ $(-6)^2 - 4(1)(k) = 0$ $36 - 4k = 0$ $k = 9$

The equation becomes $x^2 - 6x + 9 = (x - 3)^2 = 0$

Creating Quadratics from Given Information

Example: Building from Constraints

Write a quadratic equation with integer coefficients that has $x = 2 + \sqrt{3}$ as one root.

Solution: If $2 + \sqrt{3}$ is a root, then $2 - \sqrt{3}$ must also be a root (conjugate pairs).
Sum of roots: $(2 + \sqrt{3}) + (2 - \sqrt{3}) = 4$ Product of roots: $(2 + \sqrt{3})(2 - \sqrt{3}) = 4 - 3 = 1$

Equation: $x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0$

Completing the Square

Completing the square transforms a quadratic into vertex form, revealing the vertex of the parabola and making certain problems easier to solve.

Process for Completing the Square

For $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$:

1. Divide by a if $a \neq 1$
2. Move constant to right side
3. Add $(b/2)^2$ to both sides
4. Factor left side as perfect square

Example: Basic Completing the Square

Solve: $x^2 + 6x - 7 = 0$

Solution: $x^2 + 6x = 7$ Add $(6/2)^2 = 9$ to both sides: $x^2 + 6x + 9 = 7 + 9$ $(x + 3)^2 = 16$ $x + 3 = \pm 4$ $x = -3 \pm 4$ $x = 1$ or $x = -7$

Converting to Vertex Form

Vertex form: $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, where (h, k) is the vertex

Example: Finding Vertex Form

Convert $y = x^2 - 4x + 7$ to vertex form.

Solution: $y = x^2 - 4x + 7$ $y = (x^2 - 4x + 4) + 7 - 4$ $y = (x - 2)^2 + 3$

Vertex: $(2, 3)$

Applications of Completing the Square

Example: Optimization Problem

A rectangle has perimeter 20 feet. Express its area as a function of width w and find the maximum area.

Solution: If width = w , then length = $10 - w$ (since $2w + 2l = 20$) Area = $w(10 - w)$
 $= 10w - w^2$ $A = -w^2 + 10w$

Complete the square: $A = -(w^2 - 10w)$ $A = -(w^2 - 10w + 25) + 25$ $A = -(w - 5)^2 + 25$

Maximum area is 25 square feet when $w = 5$ feet.

The Quadratic Formula

The quadratic formula works for any quadratic equation and is derived by completing the square on the general form.

For $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

Understanding the Discriminant

The discriminant $\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$ determines the nature of solutions:

- $\Delta > 0$: Two distinct real solutions
- $\Delta = 0$: One repeated real solution
- $\Delta < 0$: Two complex conjugate solutions

Example: Using the Quadratic Formula

Solve: $3x^2 - 5x - 2 = 0$

Solution: $a = 3$, $b = -5$, $c = -2$ $x = \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{(25 - 4(3)(-2))}}{2(3)}$ $x = \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{(25 + 24)}}{6}$ $x = \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{49}}{6}$ $x = \frac{5 \pm 7}{6}$ $x = 2$ or $x = -1/3$

Example: Discriminant Analysis

For what values of k does $x^2 + kx + 9 = 0$ have exactly one solution?

Solution: For one solution, discriminant = $0^2 - 4(1)(9) = 0^2 - 36 = 0^2 = 36$
 $= \pm 6$

Rational vs. Irrational Solutions

Example: Nature of Solutions

Without solving, determine whether $2x^2 + 7x + 3 = 0$ has rational solutions.

Solution: Check if discriminant is a perfect square: $\Delta = 7^2 - 4(2)(3) = 49 - 24 = 25 = 5^2$

Since the discriminant is a perfect square, the solutions are rational. (In fact, they are $x = -1/2$ and $x = -3$)

Graphs of Quadratics

Understanding the graphical representation of quadratics is crucial for the SAT. Every quadratic function produces a parabola.

Key Features of Parabolas

Vertex: The turning point (maximum or minimum) **Axis of symmetry:** Vertical line through the vertex **Y-intercept:** Where the parabola crosses the y-axis (when $x = 0$) **X-intercepts:** Where the parabola crosses the x-axis (the roots)
Direction: Opens upward if $a > 0$, downward if $a < 0$

Finding the Vertex

For $y = ax^2 + bx + c$:

- x-coordinate of vertex: $x = -b/(2a)$
- y-coordinate: Substitute x back into the equation

Example: Analyzing a Parabola

For $f(x) = -2x^2 + 8x - 3$, find the vertex and determine if it's a maximum or minimum.

Solution: $a = -2$, $b = 8$, $c = -3$ x-coordinate: $x = -8/(2(-2)) = -8/(-4) = 2$ y-coordinate: $f(2) = -2(4) + 8(2) - 3 = -8 + 16 - 3 = 5$

Vertex: $(2, 5)$ Since $a = -2 < 0$, the parabola opens downward, so $(2, 5)$ is a maximum.

Transformations of Parabolas

Starting with $y = x^2$:

- $y = x^2 + k$: Vertical shift by k units
- $y = (x - h)^2$: Horizontal shift by h units
- $y = ax^2$: Vertical stretch/compression by factor $|a|$
- $y = -x^2$: Reflection over x-axis

Example: Identifying Transformations

Describe how $y = -2(x + 3)^2 + 7$ relates to $y = x^2$.

Solution:

- Shift left 3 units ($x + 3$)
- Stretch vertically by factor 2
- Reflect over x-axis (negative sign)
- Shift up 7 units

Intercepts and Factored Form

Factored form $y = a(x - r)(x - s)$ immediately shows x-intercepts at $x = r$ and $x = s$.

Example: From Graph to Equation

A parabola has x-intercepts at -1 and 3 , and passes through $(0, -6)$. Find its equation.

Solution: Start with factored form: $y = a(x + 1)(x - 3)$ Use point (0, -6): $-6 = a(0 + 1)(0 - 3)$ $-6 = a(1)(-3)$ $-6 = -3a$ $a = 2$

Equation: $y = 2(x + 1)(x - 3) = 2x^2 - 4x - 6$

Applications to Word Problems

Example: Projectile Motion

A ball is thrown upward from a 48-foot building with initial velocity 32 ft/s. Its height is given by $h(t) = -16t^2 + 32t + 48$. When does it hit the ground?

Solution: Set $h(t) = 0$: $-16t^2 + 32t + 48 = 0$ Divide by -16: $t^2 - 2t - 3 = 0$ $(t - 3)(t + 1) = 0$ $t = 3$ or $t = -1$

Since time cannot be negative, the ball hits the ground after 3 seconds.

Systems of Quadratic and Linear Equations

The SAT often combines quadratics with linear equations in systems. These can be solved by substitution or elimination.

Substitution Method

Generally easier when the linear equation is already solved for one variable.

Example: Basic System

Solve the system: $y = x^2 - 4$ $y = 2x + 1$

Solution: Substitute the second equation into the first: $2x + 1 = x^2 - 4$ $0 = x^2 - 2x - 5$

Using the quadratic formula: $x = [2 \pm \sqrt{(4 + 20)}] / 2 = [2 \pm \sqrt{24}] / 2 = [2 \pm 2\sqrt{6}] / 2 = 1 \pm \sqrt{6}$

When $x = 1 + \sqrt{6}$: $y = 2(1 + \sqrt{6}) + 1 = 3 + 2\sqrt{6}$ When $x = 1 - \sqrt{6}$: $y = 2(1 - \sqrt{6}) + 1 = 3 - 2\sqrt{6}$

Solutions: $(1 + \sqrt{6}, 3 + 2\sqrt{6})$ and $(1 - \sqrt{6}, 3 - 2\sqrt{6})$

Graphical Interpretation

A system of a quadratic and linear equation represents the intersection of a parabola and a line:

- 0 intersections: No real solutions
- 1 intersection: Line is tangent to parabola
- 2 intersections: Line crosses parabola twice

Example: Number of Solutions

For what value of k does the system have exactly one solution? $y = x^2$ $y = 2x + k$

Solution: Substitute: $x^2 = 2x + k$ $x^2 - 2x - k = 0$

For one solution, discriminant = 0: $4 - 4(1)(-k) = 0$ $4 + 4k = 0$ $k = -1$

Elimination Method

Sometimes useful when both equations are in standard form.

Example: Using Elimination

Solve: $x^2 + y = 10$ $x + y = 4$

Solution: From the second equation: $y = 4 - x$ Substitute into the first: $x^2 + (4 - x) = 10$ $x^2 - x + 4 = 10$ $x^2 - x - 6 = 0$ $(x - 3)(x + 2) = 0$ $x = 3$ or $x = -2$

When $x = 3$: $y = 4 - 3 = 1$ When $x = -2$: $y = 4 - (-2) = 6$

Solutions: $(3, 1)$ and $(-2, 6)$

Word Problems with Systems

Example: Area and Perimeter

A rectangle has area 24 square units and perimeter 20 units. Find its dimensions.

Solution: Let length = l and width = w Area: $lw = 24$ Perimeter: $2l + 2w = 20$, so $l + w = 10$

From perimeter: $w = 10 - l$ Substitute into area: $l(10 - l) = 24$ $10l - l^2 = 24$ $l^2 - 10l + 24 = 0$ $(l - 6)(l - 4) = 0$ $l = 6$ or $l = 4$

If $l = 6$, then $w = 4$ If $l = 4$, then $w = 6$

The dimensions are 6×4 units.

Advanced System Problems

Example: Quadratic-Quadratic System

Solve: $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ $y = x^2 - 5$

Solution: Substitute the second into the first: $x^2 + (x^2 - 5)^2 = 25$ $x^2 + x^4 - 10x^2 + 25 = 25$ $x^4 - 9x^2 = 0$ $x^2(x^2 - 9) = 0$ $x^2 = 0$ or $x^2 = 9$ $x = 0$ or $x = \pm 3$

When $x = 0$: $y = 0 - 5 = -5$ When $x = 3$: $y = 9 - 5 = 4$ When $x = -3$: $y = 9 - 5 = 4$

Solutions: $(0, -5)$, $(3, 4)$, and $(-3, 4)$

SAT Strategy Tips for Quadratics

Choosing the Right Method

Use factoring when:

- Coefficients are small integers
- You can quickly spot factor pairs
- The discriminant is a perfect square

Use quadratic formula when:

- Factoring seems difficult
- Coefficients are large or non-integer
- You need to find exact irrational solutions

Use completing the square when:

- Converting to vertex form
- Finding maximum/minimum values
- The problem involves circles or optimization

Time-Saving Techniques

Quick Discriminant Check: Before factoring, check if $b^2 - 4ac$ is a perfect square

Vertex Shortcut: For maximum/minimum problems, use $x = -b/(2a)$ directly

Graph Recognition: Know the shape changes based on the sign of a

System Shortcuts: Sometimes you can find one coordinate and substitute back

Common SAT Tricks

Hidden Quadratics: Equations like $x^4 - 5x^2 + 4 = 0$ can be solved by substituting $u = x^2$

Parameter Problems: When asked for values of k , set up discriminant conditions

Sum and Product: Use Vieta's formulas instead of finding individual roots

Completing the Square in Disguise: Problems about circles often require this technique

Practice Problems

Problem Set A: Factoring and Classic Quadratics

1. Solve by factoring: $6x^2 - 13x + 6 = 0$
2. If the roots of $x^2 + bx + 18 = 0$ differ by 3, find all possible values of b .
3. A quadratic equation with integer coefficients has roots $3 + \sqrt{2}$ and $3 - \sqrt{2}$. What is the equation?

Problem Set B: Completing the Square and Quadratic Formula

4. Convert to vertex form: $y = 2x^2 - 12x + 23$
5. For what values of c does $3x^2 + 6x + c = 0$ have two distinct real solutions?
6. Solve using the most efficient method: $4x^2 - 4x - 15 = 0$

Problem Set C: Graphs of Quadratics

7. A parabola has vertex $(3, -4)$ and passes through $(1, 0)$. Find its equation.
8. The graph of $y = -x^2 + 6x + k$ has a maximum value of 13. Find k .
9. For $f(x) = ax^2 + 8x + c$, the vertex is at $(2, -4)$. Find a and c .

Problem Set D: Systems

10. Solve the system: $y = x^2 - 3x + 2$ and $y = -x + 5$
11. A parabola $y = x^2 + bx + c$ passes through $(1, 4)$ and $(3, 4)$. Find b and c .
12. Find all points where the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 20$ intersects the parabola $y = x^2 - 6$.

Answer Key

1. $x = 2/3$ or $x = 3/2$ Factor as $(3x - 2)(2x - 3) = 0$
2. $b = \pm 9$ If roots are r and $r + 3$, then $r(r + 3) = 18$ $r^2 + 3r - 18 = 0$, so $r = 3$ or $r = -6$ Roots are $(3, 6)$ or $(-6, -3)$ Sum = 9 or -9, so $b = -9$ or 9
3. $x^2 - 6x + 7 = 0$ Sum = 6, Product = $9 - 2 = 7$
4. $y = 2(x - 3)^2 + 5$ $y = 2(x^2 - 6x + 9) + 23 - 18 = 2(x - 3)^2 + 5$
5. $c < 3$ Discriminant > 0 : $36 - 12c > 0$, so $c < 3$
6. $x = 5/2$ or $x = -3/2$ Using quadratic formula or factoring as $(2x - 5)(2x + 3) = 0$
7. $y = (x - 3)^2 - 4$ Use vertex form with $a = 1$ (found by substituting the point)
8. $k = 4$ Vertex x-coordinate: $x = 3$ Maximum value: $-(3)^2 + 6(3) + k = 13 - 9 + 18 + k = 13$, so $k = 4$
9. $a = -2$, $c = 4$ Vertex $x = -8/(2a) = 2$, so $a = -2$ Vertex y : $-2(4) + 8(2) + c = -4$, so $c = 4$
10. **(3, 2) and (1, 4)** $x^2 - 3x + 2 = -x + 5$ $x^2 - 2x - 3 = 0$ $(x - 3)(x + 1) = 0$, but check $x = -1$ gives $y = 6$
11. $b = -4$, $c = 7$ Points have same y-value, so axis of symmetry is $x = 2$ Thus $-b/2 = 2$, so $b = -4$ Using $(1, 4)$: $1 - 4 + c = 4$, so $c = 7$
12. **(2, 4) and (-2, 4)** Substitute $y = x^2 - 6$ into circle equation: $x^2 + (x^2 - 6)^2 = 20$ $x^2 + x^4 - 12x^2 + 36 = 20$ $x^4 - 11x^2 + 16 = 0$ Let $u = x^2$: $u^2 - 11u + 16 = 0$ $u = 4$ ($u = 7$ gives no real x) $x = \pm 2$, $y = 4$

Key Takeaways

1. **Master all methods:** Each has its place on the SAT
2. **Recognize patterns:** Classic quadratics appear frequently

3. **Connect algebra and graphs:** Understanding both representations is crucial
4. **Check your work:** Substitute solutions back when time permits
5. **Think strategically:** Choose the most efficient method for each problem
6. **Practice word problems:** Real-world applications are increasingly common

Quadratics bridge the gap between basic algebra and more advanced topics. By mastering the techniques in this chapter, you'll be prepared not only for quadratic questions but also for the many SAT problems that build upon these fundamental concepts.

SAT Geometry and Trigonometry

SAT Geometry

Geometry comprises approximately 15-20% of the SAT Math section, with problems appearing in both calculator and no-calculator portions. The SAT emphasizes practical applications of geometric concepts, often combining multiple topics within a single problem.

Unlike traditional geometry courses that focus on proofs, the SAT tests your ability to apply geometric relationships to solve real-world problems quickly and accurately.

Lines and Angles

Understanding line and angle relationships forms the foundation for more complex geometric concepts on the SAT. These relationships appear not only in pure geometry problems but also in coordinate geometry and trigonometry questions.

Angle Basics

Key angle relationships to memorize:

- Complementary angles: Two angles that sum to 90°
- Supplementary angles: Two angles that sum to 180°
- Vertical angles: Opposite angles formed by intersecting lines are equal
- Linear pair: Adjacent angles on a straight line sum to 180°

Parallel Lines and Transversals

When a transversal crosses parallel lines, it creates eight angles with specific relationships:

Corresponding angles: Equal angles in the same position at each intersection

Alternate interior angles: Equal angles on opposite sides of the transversal, inside the parallel lines

Alternate exterior angles: Equal angles on opposite sides of the transversal, outside the parallel lines

Co-interior angles: Angles on the same side of the transversal, inside the parallel lines, sum to 180°

Example: Two parallel lines are cut by a transversal. If one angle measures 65° , find all other angles.

Solution:

- Angles equal to 65° : corresponding, alternate interior, alternate exterior, and vertical angles
- Angles equal to 115° : supplements of 65° angles

Angle Sum Properties

Triangle angle sum: The three interior angles of any triangle sum to 180°

Exterior angle theorem: An exterior angle of a triangle equals the sum of the two non-adjacent interior angles

Polygon angle sum: For an n -sided polygon, interior angles sum to $(n-2) \times 180^\circ$

Example: In a triangle, two angles measure 45° and 72° . What is the measure of the exterior angle at the third vertex?

Solution: Third interior angle = $180^\circ - 45^\circ - 72^\circ = 63^\circ$ Exterior angle = $180^\circ - 63^\circ = 117^\circ$ Alternatively: Exterior angle = $45^\circ + 72^\circ = 117^\circ$

Practice Problems - Lines and Angles

1. Two lines intersect forming four angles. If one angle measures $3x + 15^\circ$ and its vertical angle measures $5x - 25^\circ$, find the value of x .
2. In a regular hexagon, what is the measure of each interior angle?
3. Two parallel lines are cut by two transversals. If the transversals intersect between the parallel lines creating a triangle with one angle of 40° , and another angle of 75° , what is the third angle?

Area, Perimeter, and Scale

The SAT frequently tests area and perimeter calculations, often in real-world contexts involving cost, materials, or optimization problems. Understanding how these measurements change with scale is crucial for many problems.

Basic Area and Perimeter Formulas

Rectangle

- Area = length \times width
- Perimeter = $2(\text{length} + \text{width})$

Square

- Area = side²
- Perimeter = 4 × side

Triangle

- Area = $\frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$
- For any triangle: Area = $\frac{1}{2}ab \sin C$ (rarely tested)

Parallelogram

- Area = base × height (height is perpendicular to base)
- Perimeter = 2(side₁ + side₂)

Trapezoid

- Area = $\frac{1}{2} \times \text{height} \times (\text{base}_1 + \text{base}_2)$

Composite Figures

The SAT often presents figures that combine basic shapes. Strategy:

1. Identify component shapes
2. Calculate individual areas
3. Add or subtract as needed

Example: A rectangular garden 20 feet by 30 feet has a circular fountain with radius 5 feet in the center. What is the area of the garden not occupied by the fountain?

Solution: Garden area = $20 \times 30 = 600$ square feet Fountain area = $\pi \times 5^2 = 25\pi$ square feet Available area = $600 - 25\pi \approx 600 - 78.5 = 521.5$ square feet

Scale Factor and Similarity

When a figure is scaled by factor k :

- All linear dimensions multiply by k
- Area multiplies by k^2
- Volume multiplies by k^3

Example: A photograph is enlarged so that its width increases from 4 inches to 10 inches. If the original area was 12 square inches, what is the new area?

Solution: Scale factor $= 10/4 = 2.5$ New area $= 12 \times (2.5)^2 = 12 \times 6.25 = 75$ square inches

Optimization Problems

The SAT may ask you to maximize area given a perimeter constraint, or minimize perimeter given an area constraint.

Example: What is the maximum area of a rectangle with perimeter 40 meters?

Solution: For a rectangle with perimeter P , maximum area occurs when it's a square. Perimeter $= 40$, so each side $= 10$ Maximum area $= 10^2 = 100$ square meters

Practice Problems - Area, Perimeter, and Scale

1. A rectangular field is divided into two parts by a fence parallel to one side. If the original field is 80 meters by 60 meters, and one part has area 2,400 square meters, what are the possible dimensions of this part?
2. A scale model of a building has surface area 450 square centimeters. If the scale is 1:50, what is the actual surface area of the building in square meters?
3. An equilateral triangle and a square have equal perimeters. If the triangle has side length 8, what is the ratio of their areas?

Similar Triangles

Similar triangles are a cornerstone of SAT geometry, appearing in problems involving proportions, indirect measurement, and coordinate geometry. Two triangles are similar if their corresponding angles are equal and corresponding sides are proportional.

Conditions for Similarity

Triangles are similar if any of these conditions are met:

- **AA (Angle-Angle):** Two pairs of corresponding angles are equal
- **SSS (Side-Side-Side):** All three pairs of sides are proportional
- **SAS (Side-Angle-Side):** Two pairs of sides are proportional and included angles are equal

The SAT most commonly uses AA similarity.

Working with Proportions

For similar triangles with sides a, b, c and a', b', c' : $a/a' = b/b' = c/c' = k$ (scale factor)

Example: Two similar triangles have corresponding sides in the ratio 3:4. If the smaller triangle has perimeter 36, what is the perimeter of the larger triangle?

Solution: Scale factor = $4/3$ Larger perimeter = $36 \times (4/3) = 48$

Common Similar Triangle Configurations

Triangles with shared angle: When two triangles share an angle and have another pair of equal angles

Shadow problems: Object height/shadow length ratios remain constant

Example: A 6-foot person casts an 8-foot shadow. At the same time, a tree casts a 24-foot shadow. How tall is the tree?

Solution: Person height/Person shadow = Tree height/Tree shadow $6/8 = h/24$
 $h = (6 \times 24)/8 = 18$ feet

Similar Triangles in Coordinate Geometry

The SAT often embeds similar triangle problems in coordinate plane contexts.

Example: A line passes through points (0, 0) and (4, 3). Another line passes through (0, 0) and (8, 6). A vertical line $x = 4$ intersects both lines. Show that the two triangles formed with the origin are similar.

Solution: Both triangles share the angle at origin Both have right angles (vertical line creates 90° angles) By AA similarity, the triangles are similar Note: The second triangle has twice the dimensions (scale factor 2)

Practice Problems - Similar Triangles

1. In triangle ABC, a line parallel to side BC intersects AB at D and AC at E. If $AD = 4$, $DB = 6$, and $AE = 6$, find EC.
2. Two similar triangles have areas in the ratio 9:25. If the smaller triangle has a median of length 6, what is the length of the corresponding median in the larger triangle?
3. A ladder leans against a wall, touching the wall 12 feet above the ground and extending 5 feet from the base of the wall. If the ladder slides down so it touches the wall 5 feet above the ground, how far is its base from the wall?

Pythagorean Theorem

The Pythagorean theorem is one of the most frequently tested concepts on the SAT, appearing in various forms and applications. For a right triangle with legs a and b and hypotenuse c :

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

Direct Applications

Example: A rectangle has length 12 and diagonal 13. What is its width?

Solution: Using Pythagorean theorem: $12^2 + w^2 = 13^2$ $144 + w^2 = 169$ $w^2 = 25$ $w = 5$

Pythagorean Triples

Memorizing common Pythagorean triples saves time:

- 3-4-5 (and multiples: 6-8-10, 9-12-15, etc.)
- 5-12-13 (and multiples: 10-24-26, etc.)
- 8-15-17
- 7-24-25

Example: A right triangle has legs in the ratio 3:4. If the hypotenuse is 20, find the legs.

Solution: Recognize the 3-4-5 ratio Scale factor = $20/5 = 4$ Legs are $3 \times 4 = 12$ and $4 \times 4 = 16$

Distance Formula

The distance between points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) is: $d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$

This is the Pythagorean theorem applied to coordinate geometry.

Three-Dimensional Applications

Example: A rectangular box has dimensions $3 \times 4 \times 12$. What is the length of the space diagonal (corner to opposite corner)?

Solution: First find diagonal of base: $\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 5$ Then find space diagonal: $\sqrt{5^2 + 12^2} = \sqrt{25 + 144} = \sqrt{169} = 13$

Practice Problems - Pythagorean Theorem

1. An isosceles triangle has base 16 and equal sides of length 10. What is its area?

2. Points A(1, 2), B(4, 6), and C form a right triangle with the right angle at B. If C is on the x-axis, find the coordinates of C.
3. A cone has radius 5 and slant height 13. What is its height?

Special Right Triangles

The SAT frequently features two special right triangles that have predictable side ratios. Recognizing these triangles allows you to solve problems quickly without lengthy calculations.

30-60-90 Triangle

Side ratios: $1 : \sqrt{3} : 2$

- Side opposite $30^\circ = 1$
- Side opposite $60^\circ = \sqrt{3}$
- Side opposite 90° (hypotenuse) = 2

Example: In a 30-60-90 triangle, the side opposite the 60° angle is $6\sqrt{3}$. Find the other sides.

Solution: If side opposite $60^\circ = 6\sqrt{3}$, then scale factor = 6
Side opposite $30^\circ = 6 \times 1 = 6$
Hypotenuse = $6 \times 2 = 12$

45-45-90 Triangle (Isosceles Right Triangle)

Side ratios: $1 : 1 : \sqrt{2}$

- Two equal legs = 1
- Hypotenuse = $\sqrt{2}$

Example: A square has diagonal $10\sqrt{2}$. What is its area?

Solution: Diagonal of square creates 45-45-90 triangles
If diagonal = $10\sqrt{2}$, then side = 10
Area = $10^2 = 100$

Recognizing Special Triangles

Look for these clues:

- Angles of 30° , 45° , or 60°
- Side ratios matching the patterns
- Equilateral triangles (create 30-60-90 when bisected)
- Squares or their diagonals (create 45-45-90)

Applications in Regular Polygons

Example: Find the area of a regular hexagon with side length 8.

Solution: Regular hexagon = 6 equilateral triangles Each triangle has side 8 Height of equilateral triangle = $(8\sqrt{3})/2 = 4\sqrt{3}$ Area of one triangle = $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 \times 4\sqrt{3} = 16\sqrt{3}$
Total area = $6 \times 16\sqrt{3} = 96\sqrt{3}$

Practice Problems - Special Right Triangles

1. An equilateral triangle has altitude 9. What is its perimeter?
2. A rhombus has diagonals of length 6 and $6\sqrt{3}$. What is the measure of its acute angle?
3. In a 45-45-90 triangle, the hypotenuse is 14. What is the area of the triangle?

Circles

Circle problems on the SAT test your knowledge of basic properties, angle relationships, and area calculations. The SAT particularly emphasizes circles in coordinate geometry contexts.

Basic Circle Properties

Key formulas:

- Circumference = $2\pi r = \pi d$
- Area = πr^2
- Arc length = $(\theta/360^\circ) \times 2\pi r$ (where θ is central angle in degrees)
- Sector area = $(\theta/360^\circ) \times \pi r^2$

Angles in Circles

Central angle: Vertex at center, equals its intercepted arc
Inscribed angle: Vertex on circle, equals half its intercepted arc

Example: An inscribed angle intercepts an arc of 140° . What is the measure of the angle?

Solution: Inscribed angle = $140^\circ/2 = 70^\circ$

Tangent Lines

Properties of tangents:

- Perpendicular to radius at point of tangency
- Two tangents from external point have equal length

Example: From a point P, two tangent lines are drawn to a circle with center O and radius 5. If $OP = 13$, what is the length of each tangent?

Solution: Tangent, radius, and line to center form right triangle Using Pythagorean theorem: $\text{tangent}^2 + 5^2 = 13^2$ $\text{tangent}^2 = 169 - 25 = 144$ $\text{tangent} = 12$

Circles in Coordinate Geometry

Standard form: $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$

- Center: (h, k)
- Radius: r

Example: A circle has equation $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 8y = 0$. Find its center and radius.

Solution: Complete the square: $(x^2 - 6x + 9) + (y^2 + 8y + 16) = 9 + 16$ $(x - 3)^2 + (y + 4)^2 = 25$ Center: $(3, -4)$, Radius: 5

Practice Problems - Circles

1. A circle has circumference 20π . What is the area of a sector with central angle 72° ?
2. Two circles with radii 5 and 12 have centers 13 units apart. What is the length of their common external tangent?
3. In a circle, chord AB has length 16 and is 6 units from the center. What is the radius?

Arc Length and Sectors

The SAT often combines arc length and sector area calculations with other geometric concepts, particularly in problems involving partial circles or real-world applications like pizza slices or pie charts.

Arc Length Formula

For a circle with radius r and central angle θ :

- If θ is in degrees: Arc length $= (\theta/360^\circ) \times 2\pi r$
- If θ is in radians: Arc length $= r\theta$

Example: A circle has radius 10. Find the length of an arc subtended by a central angle of 120° .

Solution: Arc length $= (120^\circ/360^\circ) \times 2\pi(10) = (1/3) \times 20\pi = 20\pi/3$

Sector Area Formula

- If θ is in degrees: Sector area = $(\theta/360^\circ) \times \pi r^2$
- If θ is in radians: Sector area = $\frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$

Example: A pizza with diameter 16 inches is cut into 8 equal slices. What is the area of 3 slices?

Solution: Radius = 8 inches 3 slices = $3/8$ of circle = 135° Area = $(135^\circ/360^\circ) \times \pi(8)^2 = (3/8) \times 64\pi = 24\pi$ square inches

Segment Area

A segment is the region between a chord and its arc. To find segment area:
Segment area = Sector area - Triangle area

Example: In a circle with radius 10, a chord subtends a central angle of 60° . Find the area of the minor segment.

Solution: Sector area = $(60^\circ/360^\circ) \times \pi(10)^2 = 100\pi/6$ Triangle is equilateral with side 10 (using 60° angle) Triangle area = $(10^2\sqrt{3})/4 = 25\sqrt{3}$ Segment area = $100\pi/6 - 25\sqrt{3}$

Radian Measure

The SAT occasionally uses radians:

- $180^\circ = \pi$ radians
- $1 \text{ radian} \approx 57.3^\circ$

Common conversions:

- $30^\circ = \pi/6$ radians
- $45^\circ = \pi/4$ radians
- $60^\circ = \pi/3$ radians

- $90^\circ = \pi/2$ radians

Practice Problems - Arc Length and Sectors

1. A windshield wiper blade is 18 inches long and sweeps through an angle of 110° . What area does it clean?
2. A circular track has inner radius 20 meters and outer radius 25 meters. What is the area of the track?
3. An arc of length 12π is part of a circle with circumference 30π . What is the central angle in degrees?

Three-Dimensional Figures

The SAT includes problems involving volume, surface area, and cross-sections of 3D figures. Focus on understanding the formulas and recognizing when to apply them.

Prisms and Cylinders

Rectangular prism (box)

- Volume = length \times width \times height
- Surface area = $2(lw + lh + wh)$

Cylinder

- Volume = $\pi r^2 h$
- Surface area = $2\pi r^2 + 2\pi r h$ (includes both circular ends)
- Lateral surface area = $2\pi r h$ (curved surface only)

Example: A cylindrical water tank has radius 3 feet and height 10 feet. How many cubic feet of water can it hold?

Solution: Volume = $\pi r^2 h = \pi(3)^2(10) = 90\pi$ cubic feet

Pyramids and Cones

Pyramid

- Volume = $(1/3) \times \text{base area} \times \text{height}$

Cone

- Volume = $(1/3)\pi r^2 h$
- Surface area = $\pi r^2 + \pi r l$ (where l is slant height)

Example: A cone and cylinder have the same radius (5) and height (12). What is the ratio of their volumes?

Solution: Cylinder volume = $\pi(5)^2(12) = 300\pi$ Cone volume = $(1/3)\pi(5)^2(12) = 100\pi$ Ratio = $100\pi : 300\pi = 1 : 3$

Spheres

Sphere formulas

- Volume = $(4/3)\pi r^3$
- Surface area = $4\pi r^2$

Example: A sphere has surface area 36π . What is its volume?

Solution: $4\pi r^2 = 36\pi$ $r^2 = 9$ $r = 3$ Volume = $(4/3)\pi(3)^3 = 36\pi$

Cross-Sections

The SAT may ask about cross-sections of 3D figures:

- Horizontal cross-section of sphere: circle
- Vertical cross-section of cone: triangle
- Diagonal cross-section of cube: rectangle

Composite Figures

Example: A grain silo consists of a cylinder with radius 10 feet and height 30 feet, topped with a hemisphere. What is the total volume?

Solution: Cylinder volume = $\pi(10)^2(30) = 3000\pi$ Hemisphere volume = $(1/2) \times (4/3)\pi(10)^3 = 2000\pi/3$ Total volume = $3000\pi + 2000\pi/3 = 11000\pi/3$ cubic feet

Practice Problems - Three-Dimensional Figures

1. A rectangular prism has volume 240 and height 5. If the length is twice the width, find the dimensions.
2. A sphere is inscribed in a cube with edge length 12. What is the volume of the space between the cube and sphere?
3. A cone has base radius 6 and slant height 10. What is its total surface area?

On Test Day

Success with SAT geometry requires both knowledge and strategy. Here's how to maximize your performance on geometry questions during the actual test.

Time Management

Geometry problems vary widely in difficulty. Allocate your time wisely:

- Basic angle or area problems: 30-60 seconds
- Multi-step problems: 1-2 minutes
- Complex 3D or composite figures: 2-3 minutes

If a problem seems too complex, mark it and return later.

Problem-Solving Strategies

Draw and label diagrams: Even if one is provided, add your own labels and measurements **Look for special relationships:** Check for special triangles, Pythagorean triples, or symmetry **Break complex figures into simple**

shapes: Most composite figures combine basic shapes you know **Use the answer choices:** Work backwards or eliminate impossible options

Common Shortcuts

Scale factor shortcuts:

- If linear scale is k , area scales by k^2 , volume by k^3

Angle relationships:

- Vertical angles are always equal
- Angles in a triangle sum to 180°
- Exterior angle equals sum of remote interior angles

Circle relationships:

- Inscribed angle = half the central angle
- Tangent perpendicular to radius

Avoiding Common Mistakes

Unit consistency: Ensure all measurements use the same units before calculating **Formula accuracy:** Double-check you're using the right formula (area vs. perimeter, surface area vs. volume) **Degree vs. radian mode:** Check calculator settings for trigonometry problems **Include all parts:** For surface area, include all faces; for perimeter, include all sides

Using Your Calculator Effectively

For calculator-allowed sections:

- Store π for accurate calculations
- Use parentheses to ensure correct order of operations
- Check answers for reasonableness

Example calculator sequence for sector area: $(120 \div 360) \times \pi \times 8^2 =$
Rather than: $120 \div 360 \times \pi \times 8^2$

Final Geometry Checklist

Before selecting your answer:

- Did you answer what was asked? (area vs. perimeter, radius vs. diameter)
- Are your units correct?
- Does your answer make sense in context?
- For multiple-choice, is your answer among the choices?

Key Formulas to Memorize

Triangles:

- Area = $\frac{1}{2}bh$
- Pythagorean theorem: $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$
- 30-60-90 ratios: $1 : \sqrt{3} : 2$
- 45-45-90 ratios: $1 : 1 : \sqrt{2}$

Circles:

- Circumference = $2\pi r$
- Area = πr^2
- Arc length = $(\theta/360^\circ) \times 2\pi r$
- Sector area = $(\theta/360^\circ) \times \pi r^2$

3D Figures:

- Rectangular prism: $V = lwh$

- Cylinder: $V = \pi r^2 h$
- Cone: $V = (1/3)\pi r^2 h$
- Sphere: $V = (4/3)\pi r^3$

Remember, geometry success on the SAT comes from pattern recognition and efficient problem-solving rather than memorizing every possible theorem. Practice identifying which concepts apply to each problem, and you'll improve both your accuracy and speed.

SAT Trigonometry: Sine, Cosine, and Tangent

Trigonometry, the study of triangles and the relationships between their angles and sides, extends far beyond the classroom. From GPS navigation to sound wave analysis, from architecture to astronomy, trigonometric functions help us understand and model periodic phenomena and spatial relationships. The SAT includes trigonometry as part of the Geometry and Trigonometry domain, recognizing its importance in STEM fields and advanced mathematics.

This chapter focuses on the three fundamental trigonometric functions—sine, cosine, and tangent—and their applications. While trigonometry can seem abstract at first, the SAT emphasizes practical applications and conceptual understanding over memorization of formulas. You'll encounter trigonometry in problems involving triangles, circular motion, periodic phenomena, and real-world modeling.

Understanding Trigonometric Ratios

The Foundation: Right Triangles

Trigonometry begins with right triangles. In any right triangle, the ratios of side lengths depend only on the angles, not on the size of the triangle. This fundamental insight allows us to define consistent relationships that work for all similar triangles.

Consider a right triangle with an acute angle θ (theta). We label the sides relative to this angle:

- **Hypotenuse:** The longest side, opposite the right angle
- **Opposite:** The side opposite angle θ
- **Adjacent:** The side next to angle θ (not the hypotenuse)

Defining Sine, Cosine, and Tangent

The three primary trigonometric ratios are:

Sine (sin): $\sin \theta = \text{opposite/hypotenuse}$

Cosine (cos): $\cos \theta = \text{adjacent/hypotenuse}$

Tangent (tan): $\tan \theta = \text{opposite/adjacent}$

A helpful mnemonic is **SOHCAHTOA**:

- **Sine = Opposite / Hypotenuse**
- **Cosine = Adjacent / Hypotenuse**
- **Tangent = Opposite / Adjacent**

Example: In a right triangle, one acute angle measures 30° and the hypotenuse is 10 units. Find the lengths of the other sides.

Solution: Using the standard 30-60-90 triangle ratios:

- $\sin 30^\circ = 1/2$, so opposite = $10 \times (1/2) = 5$ units
- $\cos 30^\circ = \sqrt{3}/2$, so adjacent = $10 \times (\sqrt{3}/2) = 5\sqrt{3}$ units

Key Angle Values

The SAT expects familiarity with trigonometric values for special angles. These appear frequently and should be memorized:

| Angle | $\sin \theta$ | $\cos \theta$ | $\tan \theta$ |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| 0° | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 30° | $1/2$ | $\sqrt{3}/2$ | $1/\sqrt{3} = \sqrt{3}/3$ |
| 45° | $\sqrt{2}/2$ | $\sqrt{2}/2$ | 1 |
| 60° | $\sqrt{3}/2$ | $1/2$ | $\sqrt{3}$ |
| 90° | 1 | 0 | undefined |

The Unit Circle Connection

While the SAT primarily uses right triangle trigonometry, understanding the unit circle provides deeper insight. On a circle with radius 1 centered at the origin:

- The x-coordinate of a point equals $\cos \theta$
- The y-coordinate equals $\sin \theta$
- This extends trigonometric functions beyond acute angles

Fundamental Trigonometric Relationships

The Pythagorean Identity

The most important trigonometric identity derives from the Pythagorean theorem:

$$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$$

This relationship holds for all angles and is essential for solving many SAT problems.

Example: If $\sin \theta = 3/5$ and θ is acute, find $\cos \theta$.

Solution: Using $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$: $(3/5)^2 + \cos^2\theta = 1$ $9/25 + \cos^2\theta = 1$ $\cos^2\theta = 1 - 9/25 = 16/25$ $\cos \theta = 4/5$ (positive since θ is acute)

Relationship Between Sine, Cosine, and Tangent

Since $\tan \theta = \text{opposite}/\text{adjacent}$ and $\sin \theta = \text{opposite}/\text{hypotenuse}$, $\cos \theta = \text{adjacent}/\text{hypotenuse}$:

$$\tan \theta = \sin \theta / \cos \theta \text{ (when } \cos \theta \neq 0 \text{)}$$

This relationship allows conversion between the functions.

Example: If $\sin \theta = 5/13$ and $\cos \theta = 12/13$, find $\tan \theta$.

Solution: $\tan \theta = \sin \theta / \cos \theta = (5/13) / (12/13) = 5/13 \times 13/12 = 5/12$

Complementary Angle Relationships

In a right triangle, if two angles are complementary (sum to 90°), their trigonometric ratios are related:

- $\sin \theta = \cos(90^\circ - \theta)$
- $\cos \theta = \sin(90^\circ - \theta)$

This is why we call them co-functions (cosine means "complement's sine").

Example: Find $\sin 60^\circ$ using your knowledge of $\cos 30^\circ$.

Solution: Since 60° and 30° are complementary: $\sin 60^\circ = \cos 30^\circ = \sqrt{3}/2$

Solving Right Triangles

"Solving" a triangle means finding all unknown sides and angles. The SAT tests this skill in various contexts.

Given One Side and One Acute Angle

Example: A ladder leans against a wall, making a 65° angle with the ground. If the ladder is 12 feet long, how high up the wall does it reach?

Solution: The ladder is the hypotenuse, and we need the opposite side. $\sin 65^\circ = \text{height}/12$
 $\text{height} = 12 \sin 65^\circ \approx 12(0.906) \approx 10.9$ feet

Given Two Sides

Example: A right triangle has legs of length 7 and 24. Find all angles.

Solution: First, find the hypotenuse using the Pythagorean theorem: $c^2 = 7^2 + 24^2$
 $= 49 + 576 = 625$ $c = 25$

For the angle θ opposite the side of length 7: $\sin \theta = 7/25$ $\theta = \arcsin(7/25) \approx 16.3^\circ$

The other acute angle $= 90^\circ - 16.3^\circ = 73.7^\circ$

Applications to Isosceles and Equilateral Triangles

Trigonometry helps analyze triangles that aren't right triangles by creating right triangles within them.

Example: Find the area of an isosceles triangle with two sides of length 10 and a vertex angle of 40° .

Solution: Draw an altitude from the vertex angle to the base, creating two right triangles. In each right triangle:

- Hypotenuse = 10
- Angle at top $= 40^\circ/2 = 20^\circ$

Base of each right triangle: $\sin 20^\circ = (\text{half-base})/10$ half-base $= 10 \sin 20^\circ \approx 3.42$
Full base $= 2(3.42) = 6.84$

Height: $\cos 20^\circ = \text{height}/10$ height $= 10 \cos 20^\circ \approx 9.40$

Area $= (1/2) \times \text{base} \times \text{height} = (1/2) \times 6.84 \times 9.40 \approx 32.1$ square units

Angles of Elevation and Depression

These real-world applications appear frequently on the SAT.

- **Angle of elevation:** Angle above horizontal when looking up
- **Angle of depression:** Angle below horizontal when looking down

These angles are alternate interior angles when a horizontal line crosses the line of sight, so they're equal.

Example: From the top of a 50-meter building, the angle of depression to a car is 35° . How far is the car from the base of the building?

Solution: The angle of depression from the building equals the angle of elevation from the car. $\tan 35^\circ = 50/\text{distance}$ distance = $50/\tan 35^\circ \approx 50/0.700 \approx 71.4$ meters

Trigonometry in Coordinate Geometry

The SAT often combines trigonometry with coordinate plane concepts.

Finding Distances and Angles

Example: Point A is at (3, 4) and point B is at (7, 1). Find the angle that line segment AB makes with the positive x-axis.

Solution: The rise = $1 - 4 = -3$ The run = $7 - 3 = 4$

$$\tan \theta = \text{rise/run} = -3/4 \quad \theta = \arctan(-3/4) \approx -36.9^\circ$$

Since we want the angle with the positive x-axis and the slope is negative, the line makes an angle of $360^\circ - 36.9^\circ = 323.1^\circ$ with the positive x-axis (or -36.9°).

Rotations and Transformations

Trigonometry helps describe rotations in the coordinate plane.

Example: Point P(4, 3) is rotated 90° counterclockwise about the origin. Find the coordinates of P'.

Solution: When rotating 90° counterclockwise:

- New x-coordinate = $-y = -3$
- New y-coordinate = $x = 4$ So $P' = (-3, 4)$

This can be verified using the rotation formulas involving sine and cosine.

Applications to Circles and Sectors

Arc Length and Sector Area

For a circle with radius r and central angle θ (in radians):

- Arc length = $r\theta$
- Sector area = $(1/2)r^2\theta$

The SAT may require converting between degrees and radians:

- $180^\circ = \pi$ radians
- $1^\circ = \pi/180$ radians
- 1 radian = $180/\pi$ degrees

Example: A sector of a circle with radius 6 has a central angle of 60° . Find the arc length and sector area.

Solution: First convert to radians: $60^\circ = 60 \times (\pi/180) = \pi/3$ radians

Arc length = $6 \times (\pi/3) = 2\pi$ units
Sector area = $(1/2) \times 6^2 \times (\pi/3) = 6\pi$ square units

Inscribed Angles and Triangles

Example: A triangle is inscribed in a circle with radius 5, with one side being a diameter. If one of the acute angles is 30° , find the length of the side opposite this angle.

Solution: Since one side is a diameter, the triangle is right-angled (by Thales' theorem). The hypotenuse = diameter = 10

Using $\sin 30^\circ = \text{opposite/hypotenuse}$: opposite = $10 \times \sin 30^\circ = 10 \times (1/2) = 5$ units

Trigonometric Modeling

The SAT may present real-world scenarios that require trigonometric modeling.

Periodic Phenomena

While the SAT doesn't extensively test trigonometric graphs, understanding that sine and cosine model periodic behavior is useful.

Example: The height of a point on a Ferris wheel can be modeled by $h(t) = 25 \sin(\pi t/30) + 30$, where h is height in meters and t is time in seconds. What is the maximum height?

Solution: The sine function ranges from -1 to 1. Maximum occurs when $\sin(\pi t/30) = 1$: $h_{\text{max}} = 25(1) + 30 = 55$ meters

Navigation and Bearings

Example: A ship sails 20 km on a bearing of 040° (40° east of north), then 15 km on a bearing of 130° . How far is it from its starting point?

Solution: Convert bearings to standard angles (measured counterclockwise from positive x-axis):

- First leg: $90^\circ - 40^\circ = 50^\circ$
- Second leg: $90^\circ - 130^\circ = -40^\circ$ (or 320°)

First displacement: $x_1 = 20 \cos 50^\circ \approx 12.86$ $y_1 = 20 \sin 50^\circ \approx 15.32$

Second displacement: $x_2 = 15 \cos(-40^\circ) \approx 11.49$ $y_2 = 15 \sin(-40^\circ) \approx -9.64$

Total displacement: $x = 12.86 + 11.49 = 24.35$ $y = 15.32 + (-9.64) = 5.68$

Distance = $\sqrt{(24.35^2 + 5.68^2)} \approx 25.0$ km

Problem-Solving Strategies

Choosing the Right Function

- Use **sine** when you have hypotenuse and need opposite (or vice versa)
- Use **cosine** when you have hypotenuse and need adjacent (or vice versa)
- Use **tangent** when you have opposite and adjacent (no hypotenuse involved)

Creating Right Triangles

Many problems require constructing right triangles:

- Draw altitudes in non-right triangles
- Use horizontal and vertical components
- Drop perpendiculars to axes in coordinate problems

Checking Reasonableness

- Sine and cosine values always lie between -1 and 1
- For acute angles: all trig functions are positive
- Larger angles (approaching 90°) have larger sines and smaller cosines

Common Mistakes to Avoid

- Confusing opposite and adjacent sides (draw clear diagrams)
- Using degree mode vs. radian mode incorrectly on calculators
- Forgetting that $\tan 90^\circ$ is undefined
- Assuming $\sin(A + B) = \sin A + \sin B$ (this is false!)

Practice Problems

1. In a right triangle, $\cos \theta = 5/13$. Find $\sin \theta$ and $\tan \theta$.
2. A 20-foot ladder leans against a wall. If the base of the ladder is 12 feet from the wall, what angle does the ladder make with the ground?
3. From a point 100 meters from the base of a tower, the angle of elevation to the top is 40° . Find the height of the tower.
4. Two buildings are 50 meters apart. From the top of the shorter building (30 m high), the angle of elevation to the top of the taller building is 25° . Find the height of the taller building.
5. A regular hexagon is inscribed in a circle with radius 8. Find the area of the hexagon.
6. Point A(5, 0) is rotated θ degrees counterclockwise about the origin to point A'(3, 4). Find $\sin \theta$ and $\cos \theta$.
7. In triangle ABC, angle C = 90° , angle A = 35° , and side BC = 10. Find the perimeter of the triangle.
8. A ship observes a lighthouse at a bearing of 065° . After sailing 12 km due east, the lighthouse bears 335° . How far was the ship from the lighthouse initially?
9. Find the area of a triangle with sides 8, 10, and 12 using trigonometry.
10. A sector of a circle has arc length 10π cm and central angle 72° . Find the radius and area of the sector.

Solutions

1. **$\sin \theta = 12/13$, $\tan \theta = 12/5$** Using $\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1$: $\sin^2 \theta = 1 - (5/13)^2 = 1 - 25/169 = 144/169$ $\sin \theta = 12/13$ (positive in a right triangle) $\tan \theta = \sin \theta / \cos \theta = (12/13)/(5/13) = 12/5$

2. **53.1°** Using the Pythagorean theorem: height = $\sqrt{20^2 - 12^2} = \sqrt{400 - 144} = 16$ feet $\cos \theta = \text{adjacent/hypotenuse} = 12/20 = 3/5$ $\theta = \arccos(3/5) \approx 53.1^\circ$
3. **83.9 meters** $\tan 40^\circ = \text{height}/100$ height = $100 \tan 40^\circ \approx 100(0.839) = 83.9$ meters
4. **52.2 meters** Let h = additional height of taller building above 30 m $\tan 25^\circ = h/50$ $h = 50 \tan 25^\circ \approx 50(0.466) = 23.3$ meters Total height = $30 + 23.3 = 53.3$ meters
5. **96√3 square units** A regular hexagon divides into 6 equilateral triangles. Each triangle has side length 8 (equal to radius). Area of one triangle = $(1/2) \times 8 \times 8 \times \sin 60^\circ = 32 \times (\sqrt{3}/2) = 16\sqrt{3}$ Total area = $6 \times 16\sqrt{3} = 96\sqrt{3}$ square units
6. **sin θ = 4/5, cos θ = 3/5** The distance from origin is preserved: $\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 5$ On the unit circle scaled by 5: $\cos \theta = 3/5$ (x-coordinate divided by radius) $\sin \theta = 4/5$ (y-coordinate divided by radius)
7. **Perimeter ≈ 42.4** Angle B = $90^\circ - 35^\circ = 55^\circ$ $\tan 35^\circ = 10/AC$, so $AC = 10/\tan 35^\circ \approx 14.3$ $\sin 35^\circ = 10/AB$, so $AB = 10/\sin 35^\circ \approx 17.4$ Perimeter = $10 + 14.3 + 17.4 = 41.7$
8. **15.5 km** This creates a triangle where we know one side (12 km) and two angles. The angle at the lighthouse = $065^\circ + (360^\circ - 335^\circ) = 90^\circ$ Using the sine rule in the resulting right triangle: Initial distance = $12/\sin(065^\circ) \times \sin(90^\circ) \approx 13.2$ km
9. **Area = 40 square units** First find angle using cosine rule: For the angle opposite side 12: $\cos \theta = (8^2 + 10^2 - 12^2)/(2 \times 8 \times 10) = 20/160 = 1/8$ $\sin \theta = \sqrt{1 - 1/64} = \sqrt{63/64} = 3\sqrt{7}/8$ Area = $(1/2) \times 8 \times 10 \times \sin \theta = 40 \times (3\sqrt{7}/8) = 15\sqrt{7} \approx 39.7$ square units
10. **Radius = 25 cm, Area = 125π cm²** Convert 72° to radians: $72^\circ = 72\pi/180 = 2\pi/5$ radians Arc length = $r\theta$, so $10\pi = r(2\pi/5)$ $r = 10\pi/(2\pi/5) = 25$ cm Area = $(1/2)r^2\theta = (1/2)(25)^2(2\pi/5) = 125\pi$ cm²

Key Takeaways

Essential Concepts

- SOHCAHTOA defines the three basic trigonometric ratios
- The Pythagorean identity $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$ is fundamental
- Special angles (30° , 45° , 60°) have exact trigonometric values
- Trigonometry extends beyond right triangles through the unit circle

Problem-Solving Approach

- Always draw clear diagrams labeling sides and angles
- Identify what you know and what you need to find
- Choose the appropriate trigonometric function
- Check that your answer makes sense in context

Real-World Applications

- Navigation and bearings
- Heights and distances (angles of elevation/depression)
- Circular motion and sectors
- Engineering and physics problems

SAT-Specific Tips

- Memorize special angle values
- Practice creating right triangles within complex figures
- Understand both degree and radian measure

- Connect trigonometry to coordinate geometry

Trigonometry provides powerful tools for solving problems involving angles and distances. While the formulas may seem abstract, remember that they describe fundamental relationships in the physical world.

Master these concepts, and you'll be prepared not just for the SAT, but for advanced mathematics and science courses that build upon this foundation.

PART 3 — SAT Reading & Writing

Information and Ideas

The Information and Ideas questions form the core of the SAT Reading and Writing section, testing your ability to comprehend, analyze, and interpret texts across various disciplines. On the digital SAT, these questions appear as discrete units, each with its own short passage, requiring quick comprehension and precise analysis.

Main Idea Questions

Main idea questions test your ability to identify the central point, primary purpose, or overall message of a passage. These questions require you to distinguish between the "big picture" and supporting details, a crucial skill for the condensed passages of the digital SAT.

Recognizing Main Idea Questions

Main idea questions typically use phrases like:

1. "The main purpose of the text is to..."

2. "Which choice best states the central idea of the text?"
3. "The passage primarily serves to..."
4. "The author's primary argument is that..."

Strategic Approach

When tackling main idea questions, resist the temptation to select an answer simply because it contains true information from the passage. The correct answer must capture the overarching purpose or central claim, not merely a supporting detail or minor point.

Read actively, asking yourself: What is the author trying to accomplish? What point are all the details supporting? The main idea often appears in the opening or closing sentences, but skilled authors may develop it throughout the passage.

Common Pitfalls

Beware of answer choices that are too narrow, focusing on only one part of the passage, or too broad, making claims beyond what the text supports. The correct answer strikes a balance, encompassing the full scope of the passage without overreaching.

Practice Example

Consider this passage:

"Recent archaeological discoveries in the Amazon rainforest have challenged long-held assumptions about pre-Columbian civilizations. Using LiDAR technology, researchers have uncovered vast networks of roads, canals, and urban centers hidden beneath the forest canopy. These findings suggest that the Amazon supported complex societies with sophisticated agricultural systems, contradicting the traditional view of the region as sparsely populated wilderness. The scale of these settlements indicates that millions of people may have inhabited the Amazon before European contact, fundamentally altering our understanding of indigenous American history."

Question: Which choice best states the main idea of the text?

A) LiDAR technology has revolutionized archaeological research methods in dense forest environments. B) The Amazon rainforest was once home to millions of people living in urban centers. C) New archaeological evidence reveals that pre-Columbian Amazonian civilizations were far more complex and populous than previously believed. D) Traditional archaeological methods failed to discover important historical sites in South America.

The correct answer is C. While A discusses LiDAR technology mentioned in the passage, it's merely a tool used for discovery, not the main point. B is too specific, focusing only on population numbers. D makes a claim about traditional methods that the passage doesn't emphasize. Choice C captures the essence: new discoveries are changing our understanding of Amazonian civilizations.

Detail Questions

Detail questions assess your ability to locate and understand specific information explicitly stated in the text. On the digital SAT, with its shorter passages, these questions require careful reading and attention to precise wording.

Identifying Detail Questions

Look for question stems such as:

1. "According to the text, which of the following..."
2. "The passage indicates that..."
3. "The author states that..."
4. "Which detail from the text supports..."

Effective Strategies

Detail questions are often the most straightforward, but they require precision. The answer will be directly stated or clearly paraphrased from the passage. Avoid the temptation to infer or extend beyond what's explicitly written.

When approaching these questions, scan the passage for keywords from the question. The digital SAT's shorter passages make this strategy particularly

effective. Pay attention to transition words, dates, names, and other specific markers that can guide you to the relevant information.

Avoiding Distractors

Wrong answers often include information that seems plausible but isn't actually in the passage, combines details incorrectly, or contradicts the passage's actual statements. Some distractors may use words from the passage but in different contexts or relationships.

Practice Example

Consider this passage:

"Marine biologist Dr. Elena Rodriguez's groundbreaking study of octopus behavior has revealed surprising cognitive abilities in these cephalopods. Over a five-year period, Rodriguez observed octopuses in controlled laboratory settings demonstrating tool use, problem-solving skills, and even what appears to be play behavior. Most remarkably, her team documented instances of octopuses recognizing individual human researchers and responding differently to each person. These findings, published in the *Journal of Comparative Cognition*, suggest that octopus intelligence may rival that of many vertebrates, despite their evolutionary path diverging from ours over 600 million years ago."

Question: According to the text, what did Dr. Rodriguez's team specifically document about octopus behavior?

A) Octopuses can communicate with each other using color changes B) Octopuses showed the ability to recognize and respond differently to individual humans C) Octopuses have intelligence superior to most vertebrates D) Octopuses evolved their cognitive abilities within the last million years

The correct answer is B. This detail is explicitly stated in the passage. Choice A introduces information about color changes not mentioned in the text. Choice C overstates the finding—the passage says intelligence may "rival," not exceed. Choice D contradicts the passage's statement about 600 million years of divergent evolution.

Command of Evidence Questions (Textual)

Command of Evidence questions require you to identify textual support for claims, conclusions, or answers to previous questions. These questions test your ability to connect assertions with their supporting evidence, a critical skill for academic reading.

Question Types

Textual evidence questions appear in several formats:

1. "Which quotation from the text best supports the answer to the previous question?"
2. "Which statement from the passage provides the strongest evidence for..."
3. "The author supports the claim that... by..."

Strategic Approach

For paired questions (where one question asks for a claim and the next asks for supporting evidence), consider working backwards. Read the evidence choices first, then determine which claim each piece of evidence could support. This approach can help you verify both answers simultaneously.

When evaluating evidence, consider both relevance and strength. The best evidence directly addresses the claim without requiring additional inference or interpretation. Avoid selecting evidence that only tangentially relates to the claim or requires significant logical leaps.

Critical Evaluation

Strong evidence is specific, direct, and sufficient. Weak evidence may be too general, address only part of the claim, or require assumptions not supported by the text. The digital SAT often includes plausible but insufficient evidence as distractors.

Practice Example

Consider this passage:

"The restoration of the Mesopotamian Marshes in southern Iraq represents one of the most ambitious ecological recovery projects in history. Following decades of deliberate draining under Saddam Hussein's regime, which destroyed 90% of the wetlands, international organizations partnered with local communities to reflood the marshes. The project has achieved remarkable success: water buffalo populations have rebounded from near extinction, migratory birds have returned in massive numbers, and the Marsh Arabs have begun rebuilding their traditional reed houses and resuming their ancestral fishing practices. However, upstream damming and climate change continue to threaten the marshes' long-term viability."

Question: A student claims that the Mesopotamian Marshes restoration has been largely successful despite ongoing challenges. Which quotation from the text best supports this claim?

A) "The restoration of the Mesopotamian Marshes in southern Iraq represents one of the most ambitious ecological recovery projects in history." B) "Following decades of deliberate draining under Saddam Hussein's regime, which destroyed 90% of the wetlands, international organizations partnered with local communities." C) "The project has achieved remarkable success: water buffalo populations have rebounded from near extinction, migratory birds have returned in massive numbers, and the Marsh Arabs have begun rebuilding their traditional reed houses." D) "However, upstream damming and climate change continue to threaten the marshes' long-term viability."

The correct answer is C. This quotation directly supports both parts of the claim—it explicitly states the project has achieved "remarkable success" and provides specific examples, while the student's claim acknowledges ongoing challenges (addressed elsewhere in the passage). Choice A only describes the project's ambition, not its success. Choice B provides background without addressing success. Choice D only addresses the challenges, not the success.

Command of Evidence Questions (Quantitative)

The digital SAT integrates quantitative information into reading passages through graphs, charts, and data descriptions. Command of Evidence questions for quantitative information test your ability to interpret data and connect it to textual claims.

Understanding Quantitative Integration

These questions require you to:

1. Interpret graphs, charts, or tables accurately
2. Connect data trends to textual arguments
3. Evaluate whether data supports or contradicts claims
4. Synthesize quantitative and qualitative information

Analytical Strategies

When approaching quantitative evidence questions, first ensure you understand what the data represents. Check axes labels, units, time periods, and any legends or keys. Then, identify the specific claim being tested and determine what data pattern would support or refute it.

Be precise about what the data shows versus what it doesn't show. Correlation isn't causation, and a single data point doesn't establish a trend. The SAT often tests whether you can distinguish between what data actually demonstrates and what someone might incorrectly infer from it.

Common Misinterpretations

Watch for these common errors:

1. Confusing absolute numbers with percentages or rates
2. Misreading scales or units

3. Overlooking timeframes or geographic limitations
4. Assuming causation from correlation
5. Extrapolating beyond the data's scope

Practice Example

Consider this passage with accompanying data:

"Economist Dr. Sarah Chen argues that remote work adoption has fundamentally altered urban housing markets. Her analysis suggests that the ability to work from home has driven a suburban migration trend, with professionals leaving expensive city centers for more affordable areas. This shift, Chen contends, has led to declining rental prices in major metropolitan areas while suburban and rural housing markets have experienced unprecedented demand."

[Accompanying graph shows: "Median Rental Prices (2019-2023)" with three lines - Urban (declining from \$2,400 to \$2,100), Suburban (rising from \$1,600 to \$1,900), and Rural (rising from \$1,200 to \$1,500)]

Question: Do the data in the graph support Dr. Chen's argument about rental price trends?

A) Yes, because urban rental prices decreased while both suburban and rural prices increased during the period shown. B) Yes, because the graph shows that suburban areas experienced the largest absolute price increase. C) No, because urban areas still maintain higher median rental prices than suburban or rural areas. D) No, because the data only covers a five-year period, which is insufficient to establish a trend.

The correct answer is A. The graph directly supports Chen's claim about declining urban rental prices and increased demand (reflected in higher prices) in suburban and rural areas. Choice B, while noting a true fact, doesn't address the full scope of Chen's argument. Choice C is irrelevant—Chen discusses price trends, not absolute price levels. Choice D incorrectly suggests the timeframe invalidates the trend, when the period clearly shows the pattern Chen describes.

Inference Questions

Inference questions require you to draw logical conclusions based on information in the passage. These questions test your ability to understand implications, recognize unstated assumptions, and extend the author's reasoning without overreaching.

Recognizing Inference Questions

Common phrasings include:

1. "Based on the text, which conclusion is most logical?"
2. "The passage most strongly suggests that..."
3. "Which statement would the author most likely agree with?"
4. "It can be reasonably inferred from the passage that..."

Making Valid Inferences

Strong inferences stay close to the text while extending slightly beyond what's explicitly stated. They should be:

1. Logically necessary given the information provided
2. Consistent with the passage's tone and purpose
3. Supported by multiple details when possible
4. Conservative rather than speculative

The key is finding the balance between what's directly stated and what must be true given those statements. Avoid inferences that require outside knowledge or assumptions not supported by the passage.

Distinguishing Inference from Speculation

Valid inferences follow necessarily from the text, while speculation involves possibilities that might be true but aren't required by the given information. The digital SAT rewards careful, text-based reasoning over creative interpretation.

Practice Example

Consider this passage:

"The discovery of CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing technology has revolutionized biological research, but its application to human embryos remains controversial. While several countries have established strict regulations prohibiting germline editing, others have adopted more permissive frameworks. Dr. Jennifer Martinez, a bioethicist at Stanford, argues that the international community's failure to establish unified guidelines creates a dangerous regulatory patchwork. She warns that without coordinated oversight, researchers may engage in 'regulatory shopping,' conducting controversial experiments in countries with the most lenient rules. This fragmented approach, Martinez contends, undermines both scientific integrity and public trust in genetic research."

Question: Based on the text, which statement about Dr. Martinez's position can be most reasonably inferred?

A) She believes CRISPR technology should be banned entirely until safety concerns are resolved. B) She thinks individual countries lack the expertise to create effective gene editing regulations. C) She considers international coordination essential for responsible governance of gene editing research. D) She supports allowing each nation to develop regulations based on their cultural values.

The correct answer is C. This inference follows logically from Martinez's criticism of the "failure to establish unified guidelines" and her warning about "regulatory shopping." She clearly sees the lack of coordination as problematic. Choice A goes too far—she discusses regulation, not banning. Choice B isn't supported—she criticizes the patchwork approach, not countries' expertise. Choice D contradicts her position, as she opposes the fragmented approach that results from individual national policies.

Integrated Strategies for Success

Active Reading Techniques

Successful performance on Information and Ideas questions requires engaged, purposeful reading. As you read each passage:

1. Identify the author's purpose and perspective
2. Note shifts in argument or topic
3. Mark key evidence and examples
4. Consider the relationship between claims and support
5. Anticipate potential questions

Time Management

The digital SAT's adaptive format means efficient time use is crucial. For Information and Ideas questions:

1. Read the question first to focus your passage reading
2. Don't spend excessive time on difficult questions—flag and return if needed
3. Use process of elimination actively
4. Trust your first instinct unless you find clear contrary evidence

Cross-Question Connections

Often, understanding from one question type reinforces another. A clear grasp of the main idea helps with inference questions. Strong detail recognition supports evidence identification. Practice seeing these connections to build comprehensive understanding.

Precision in Language

The SAT rewards precise reading and thinking. Pay attention to:

1. Qualifiers (some, many, all, never, always)
2. Comparative language (more than, less than, equal to)
3. Temporal markers (before, after, during, while)
4. Causal language (because, therefore, leads to, results in)

These linguistic cues often distinguish correct answers from appealing distractors.

Building Endurance and Accuracy

Regular practice with varied passages—scientific articles, historical analyses, literary criticism, social science research—builds the flexibility needed for test day. Focus on understanding not just what the correct answer is, but why other choices are wrong. This metacognitive approach strengthens your reasoning and reduces susceptibility to clever distractors.

The Information and Ideas questions on the SAT Reading and Writing section ultimately test your ability to engage thoughtfully with complex texts. By mastering these question types and developing systematic approaches to each, you'll be prepared to demonstrate the careful reading and critical thinking skills that predict college success.

Craft and Structure

Craft and Structure questions form a crucial component of the SAT Reading and Writing section, accounting for approximately 25-30% of all questions. These questions test your ability to understand how authors construct their texts, why they make specific word choices, and how ideas connect within and across passages.

The SAT has refined these question types to focus on practical comprehension skills that mirror real-world reading tasks. This chapter will equip you with strategies to master Words in Context, Purpose, and Connections questions.

Words in Context Questions

Words in Context questions test your ability to understand vocabulary based on how words are used in passages, rather than memorized definitions. The SAT emphasizes practical vocabulary that appears in college-level texts across various disciplines.

Understanding Context Clues

Context clues are hints within the passage that help determine a word's meaning. These clues can appear before, after, or even several sentences away from the target word.

Types of Context Clues:

- **Definition/Restatement:** The text directly defines or restates the word
- **Contrast/Antonym:** The text provides an opposite meaning
- **Example/Illustration:** Specific examples clarify the word's meaning
- **Cause/Effect:** The word's meaning is revealed through logical relationships
- **General Sense:** Overall passage meaning guides understanding

Strategy for Words in Context Questions

Step-by-Step Approach:

1. Cover the answer choices initially
2. Read the sentence containing the target word
3. Expand to surrounding sentences if needed
4. Predict the word's meaning based on context
5. Find the choice that best matches your prediction

6. Verify by substituting your choice into the passage

Example: Scientific Context

"The researcher's findings were provisional, subject to revision as more data became available from the ongoing longitudinal study."

What does "provisional" most nearly mean in this context?

A) Professional B) Temporary C) Doubtful D) Regional

Analysis: The phrase "subject to revision" indicates that the findings might change. The mention of "more data became available" and "ongoing study" reinforces that these findings aren't final.

Answer: B) Temporary - The context shows the findings are not permanent or final.

Multiple Meanings and Academic Vocabulary

The SAT frequently tests words with multiple meanings, requiring you to identify which meaning applies in the given context.

Example: Multiple Meanings

"The company's decision to abandon its original business model and embrace digital transformation was a calculated risk that ultimately secured its position in the market."

As used in the text, "secured" most nearly means:

A) Locked B) Obtained C) Fastened D) Ensured

Analysis: While "secured" can mean locked or fastened in other contexts, here it relates to the company's market position after taking a risk. The word describes achieving stability or certainty.

Answer: D) Ensured - The company ensured or guaranteed its market position.

Tone and Connotation

Some Words in Context questions require understanding not just meaning but also tone or attitude conveyed by word choice.

Example: Understanding Connotation

"Critics dismissed the artist's latest work as derivative, claiming it merely recycled themes from her earlier, more innovative period."

The word "derivative" in this context suggests that the critics viewed the work as:

A) Mathematical B) Unoriginal C) Profitable D) Complex

Analysis: The critics "dismissed" the work, indicating negative judgment. The phrase "merely recycled themes" and the contrast with "more innovative" confirm this negative view.

Answer: B) Unoriginal - The critics saw the work as lacking originality.

Technical and Discipline-Specific Vocabulary

The SAT includes passages from various fields, requiring comfort with specialized vocabulary interpreted through context.

Example: Scientific Terminology

"The study revealed that the pathogen exhibited remarkable plasticity, adapting rapidly to environmental pressures and developing resistance to multiple treatment protocols."

In this context, "plasticity" most nearly means:

A) Artificial quality B) Flexibility C) Transparency D) Durability

Analysis: The text describes the pathogen as "adapting rapidly" and "developing resistance," indicating changeability and adaptability rather than rigidity.

Answer: B) Flexibility - The pathogen shows flexibility in adapting to conditions.

Purpose Questions

Purpose questions ask why an author includes specific information, uses particular rhetorical strategies, or structures text in certain ways. These questions require understanding authorial intent beyond surface-level comprehension.

Types of Purpose Questions

Information Purpose: Why does the author include specific facts or examples?

Structural Purpose: Why does the author organize information in a particular way?

Rhetorical Purpose: Why does the author use specific persuasive techniques?

Stylistic Purpose: Why does the author employ certain literary devices?

Identifying Author's Purpose

Key indicators of purpose include:

- Transitional phrases (however, therefore, for example)
- Placement within the passage structure
- Relationship to main argument or theme
- Tone and style choices

Example: Supporting Evidence

"Proponents of the four-day work week cite numerous benefits, including increased productivity and employee satisfaction. A recent study in Iceland, which involved over 2,500 workers across various industries, found that productivity remained stable or improved when work hours were reduced from 40 to 35-36 hours per week, while worker wellbeing increased significantly."

The author most likely mentions the Iceland study in order to:

A) Criticize traditional work schedules B) Provide empirical support for an argument C) Introduce a counterargument D) Define productivity metrics

Analysis: The study is introduced after claiming "numerous benefits" of the four-day work week. The specific data about productivity and wellbeing directly supports the claimed benefits.

Answer: B) Provide empirical support for an argument

Rhetorical Strategies and Their Purposes

Authors employ various rhetorical strategies, each serving specific purposes:

Analogy: Clarify complex concepts through comparison

Anecdote: Engage readers emotionally or illustrate abstract ideas

Statistics: Provide credible evidence

Questions: Engage readers or introduce new perspectives

Repetition: Emphasize key points

Example: Rhetorical Question

"But what happens when artificial intelligence surpasses human intelligence not just in specific tasks, but across all cognitive domains? This prospect, often called artificial general intelligence or AGI, raises profound questions about humanity's future role in a world where machines can outthink us in every arena."

The author's primary purpose in posing the opening question is to:

A) Express confusion about technology B) Introduce a thought-provoking scenario C) Criticize current AI research D) Provide a technical definition

Analysis: The question introduces the concept of AGI and sets up discussion of "profound questions about humanity's future role." It's designed to make readers think about implications.

Answer: B) Introduce a thought-provoking scenario

Analyzing Paragraph and Sentence Function

Purpose questions often focus on how specific paragraphs or sentences function within the larger text structure.

Example: Paragraph Function

"[Paragraph 1 discusses the history of urban planning] [Paragraph 2 describes current challenges in cities] However, innovative cities worldwide are pioneering solutions that balance growth with livability. Copenhagen's extensive bicycle infrastructure has reduced car dependency while improving air quality and public health. Singapore's vertical gardens and green building requirements demonstrate how dense urban areas can incorporate nature."

The primary purpose of the third paragraph is to:

A) Contradict the previous paragraphs B) Shift from problems to solutions C) Provide historical context D) Define key terminology

Analysis: The transition "However" signals a shift. After discussing history and challenges, this paragraph presents positive examples of cities addressing problems.

Answer: B) Shift from problems to solutions

Understanding Authorial Tone and Purpose

Sometimes purpose questions require recognizing how tone serves the author's intent.

Example: Tone and Purpose

"While some herald cryptocurrency as the future of finance, promising liberation from traditional banking systems, a closer examination reveals a technology still plagued by volatility, security concerns, and environmental costs that its evangelists conveniently overlook."

The author's use of the phrase "conveniently overlook" serves to:

A) Praise cryptocurrency advocates B) Suggest deliberate omission of problems C) Provide technical analysis D) Maintain objectivity

Analysis: "Conveniently overlook" implies cryptocurrency supporters knowingly ignore problems. This critical tone reveals the author's skeptical stance.

Answer: B) Suggest deliberate omission of problems

Connections Questions

Connections questions test your ability to understand relationships between ideas, sentences, paragraphs, or even multiple texts. The SAT emphasizes these questions to assess comprehension of complex arguments and text structures.

Types of Connections

Logical Connections: Cause-effect, comparison-contrast, problem-solution

Sequential Connections: Chronological order, process steps

Hierarchical Connections: General to specific, claim to evidence

Thematic Connections: Related ideas across paragraphs or texts

Identifying Relationship Markers

Transitional words and phrases signal connections:

- **Addition:** furthermore, moreover, additionally
- **Contrast:** however, nevertheless, on the other hand
- **Cause/Effect:** therefore, consequently, as a result
- **Example:** for instance, specifically, to illustrate
- **Sequence:** first, subsequently, finally

Example: Cause and Effect

"The introduction of invasive zebra mussels into the Great Lakes has triggered a cascade of ecological changes. These filter-feeding mollusks have dramatically increased water clarity by consuming vast quantities of phytoplankton. Consequently, sunlight now penetrates deeper into the water, promoting the growth of bottom-dwelling algae and altering the entire food web."

Which choice best describes the relationship between the sentences in this paragraph?

- A) The first sentence presents a problem that the following sentences solve
- B) The first sentence makes a claim that the following sentences support with evidence
- C) The first sentence describes a cause whose effects are detailed in the following sentences
- D) The first sentence poses a question that the following sentences answer

Analysis: The paragraph traces how zebra mussels (cause) lead to increased water clarity, which causes more sunlight penetration, which causes algae growth (chain of effects).

Answer: C) The first sentence describes a cause whose effects are detailed in the following sentences

Connecting Ideas Across Paragraphs

Some questions ask about relationships between different parts of a passage.

Example: Inter-paragraph Connections

*"[End of paragraph 2]: ...These factors combined to create unprecedented economic inequality in the late 19th century.

[Beginning of paragraph 3]: The Progressive Era emerged as a direct response to these conditions, with reformers advocating for regulations to curb corporate power and protect workers' rights."*

How does paragraph 3 relate to paragraph 2?

- A) It contradicts the claims made in paragraph 2
- B) It describes consequences of the situation presented in paragraph 2
- C) It provides earlier historical context for paragraph 2
- D) It presents an alternative interpretation of the same events

Analysis: Paragraph 2 describes problems (economic inequality), and paragraph 3 describes the response (Progressive Era reforms) to those problems.

Answer: B) It describes consequences of the situation presented in paragraph 2

Synthesis and Comparison

Advanced connections questions may ask you to synthesize information from multiple parts of a text or compare different viewpoints.

Example: Synthesizing Information

"[Paragraph 1 discusses benefits of renewable energy] [Paragraph 2 discusses challenges of renewable energy] [Paragraph 3 states]: The path forward requires acknowledging both the promise and the limitations of renewable technologies. While solar and wind power offer clean alternatives to fossil fuels, their intermittent nature demands innovative storage solutions and grid modernization."

How does paragraph 3 relate to the previous paragraphs?

- A) It rejects the ideas in both previous paragraphs
- B) It supports paragraph 1 while ignoring paragraph 2
- C) It synthesizes perspectives from both previous paragraphs
- D) It introduces an entirely new topic

Analysis: Paragraph 3 explicitly mentions "both the promise and the limitations," incorporating the positive aspects from paragraph 1 and challenges from paragraph 2.

Answer: C) It synthesizes perspectives from both previous paragraphs

Connecting Evidence to Claims

Many connections questions focus on how evidence supports or challenges claims.

Example: Evidence-Claim Relationship

"Researchers have long debated whether social media use correlates with decreased face-to-face interaction among young people. A longitudinal study tracking 500 teenagers over five years found that those who spent more than three hours daily on social media platforms reported 40% fewer in-person social activities compared to moderate users. However, the study also noted that heavy social media users maintained larger overall social networks and reported similar levels of social satisfaction."

How does the information about social satisfaction relate to the study's main finding?

- A) It contradicts the implication that reduced face-to-face interaction is harmful
- B) It proves that social media is superior to in-person interaction
- C) It explains why teenagers prefer social media
- D) It supports the claim that social media decreases face-to-face interaction

Analysis: While the study shows decreased in-person interaction, the "However" introduces a complicating factor—users still report satisfaction despite fewer face-to-face meetings.

Answer: A) It contradicts the implication that reduced face-to-face interaction is harmful

Dual Text Connections

The SAT includes questions comparing or connecting ideas across two related texts.

Example: Cross-Text Analysis

Text 1: "Urban vertical farms represent the future of agriculture, offering year-round production, minimal water usage, and elimination of pesticides while bringing food production closer to consumers."

Text 2: "Despite the enthusiasm surrounding vertical farming, critics point to the enormous energy costs of artificial lighting and climate control, which often result in a larger carbon footprint than traditional farming when fossil fuels power the electrical grid."

How does Text 2 relate to the claims in Text 1?

- A) It provides additional support for vertical farming
- B) It presents challenges that complicate Text 1's optimistic view
- C) It discusses an entirely different farming method
- D) It agrees with Text 1's assessment of benefits

Analysis: Text 2 acknowledges vertical farming but introduces energy-related concerns not mentioned in Text 1's positive portrayal.

Answer: B) It presents challenges that complicate Text 1's optimistic view

Integrated Strategy Approach

Success with Craft and Structure questions requires integrating all three question types:

Holistic Reading Strategy

1. **First Pass:** Read for main idea and structure
2. **Note Transitions:** Mark relationship indicators
3. **Track Purpose:** Ask "why" for each paragraph
4. **Context Awareness:** Note where difficult vocabulary appears
5. **Connect Ideas:** See how parts relate to the whole

Time Management Tips

- **Words in Context:** 30-45 seconds per question
- **Purpose Questions:** 45-60 seconds per question
- **Connections Questions:** 60-75 seconds per question

Adjust based on passage complexity and your strengths.

Common Pitfalls to Avoid

Words in Context Pitfalls:

- Choosing familiar definitions without checking context
- Ignoring tone or connotation
- Not reading enough surrounding context

Purpose Question Pitfalls:

- Selecting overly broad or narrow purposes
- Confusing what is said with why it's said
- Missing rhetorical strategies

Connections Question Pitfalls:

- Misidentifying transitional relationships
- Focusing on one part while ignoring the whole
- Oversimplifying complex relationships

Practice Exercises

Exercise Set A: Words in Context

Read the following passage excerpt:

"The archipelago's biodiversity has proven remarkably resilient despite centuries of human habitation. While some endemic species have vanished, others have adapted to anthropogenic changes in surprising ways. The native finches, for instance, have modified their feeding behaviors to exploit new food sources introduced by human settlement."

1. As used in the text, "endemic" most nearly means: A) Diseased B) Native C) Extinct D) Migratory
2. The word "anthropogenic" in this context refers to changes that are: A) Natural B) Gradual C) Human-caused D) Beneficial

Exercise Set B: Purpose Questions

"The debate over artificial sweeteners illustrates how scientific consensus can shift over time. Initially hailed as a breakthrough for diabetics and dieters, these sugar substitutes faced scrutiny in the 1970s when studies linked saccharin to bladder cancer in laboratory rats. However, subsequent research with more rigorous methodologies failed to replicate these findings in humans, leading regulatory agencies to reverse their positions."

3. The author mentions the 1970s saccharin studies primarily to: A) Warn readers about artificial sweeteners B) Demonstrate how scientific understanding evolves C) Criticize outdated research methods D) Advocate for stricter regulations

4. The phrase "more rigorous methodologies" serves to: A) Dismiss all previous research B) Explain why later findings differed C) Praise modern scientists D) Introduce technical terminology

Exercise Set C: Connections Questions

"[Paragraph A]: Remote work technologies have revolutionized the traditional office model, enabling employees to collaborate effectively from anywhere in the world. Companies report increased productivity and employee satisfaction, while workers enjoy flexibility and eliminated commutes.

[Paragraph B]: Yet this shift has created new challenges. The blurring of work-life boundaries has led to increased burnout, while the loss of casual office interactions may hinder innovation and mentorship opportunities. Urban centers face economic disruption as office workers disappear from downtown cores."

5. How does Paragraph B relate to Paragraph A? A) It provides specific examples supporting Paragraph A B) It presents contrasting consequences to those in Paragraph A C) It explains the historical context for Paragraph A D) It repeats the same information as Paragraph A
6. The transition word "Yet" at the beginning of Paragraph B signals: A) A continuation of the same idea B) A shift to examining drawbacks C) A chronological progression D) A cause-and-effect relationship

Answer Key and Explanations

1. **B) Native** - "Endemic" species are those naturally occurring in a specific region, confirmed by context about species that have "vanished" or "adapted" to human presence.
2. **C) Human-caused** - The passage discusses "human habitation" and "human settlement," making clear that anthropogenic means human-caused changes.
3. **B) Demonstrate how scientific understanding evolves** - The passage shows how views on artificial sweeteners changed from "breakthrough" to "scrutiny" to acceptance, illustrating shifting scientific consensus.

4. **B) Explain why later findings differed** - The phrase explains why subsequent research reached different conclusions than the 1970s studies.
5. **B) It presents contrasting consequences to those in Paragraph A** - Paragraph A presents benefits (productivity, satisfaction, flexibility) while Paragraph B presents problems (burnout, lost innovation, economic disruption).
6. **B) A shift to examining drawbacks** - "Yet" introduces contrast, and the paragraph indeed shifts from benefits to challenges.

Key Takeaways

For Words in Context:

- Always verify meaning fits the specific context
- Consider tone and connotation, not just definition
- Read sufficient surrounding text for clarity

For Purpose Questions:

- Distinguish between what is said and why it's said
- Consider placement within passage structure
- Recognize common rhetorical strategies

For Connections Questions:

- Identify transitional words and phrases
- Understand common relationship types
- See how parts contribute to the whole

Mastering Craft and Structure questions requires active, analytical reading. Focus on understanding not just what authors say, but how and why they construct their

arguments. With practice, you'll develop the skills to quickly identify context clues, recognize authorial purposes, and trace connections throughout complex texts.

Expression of Ideas

The ability to connect ideas clearly and logically forms the backbone of effective communication. Whether you're writing a research paper, crafting a business proposal, or simply explaining a complex concept, you need to guide your reader smoothly from one thought to the next. The SAT Reading and Writing section tests these essential skills through Expression of Ideas questions, with particular emphasis on Synthesis and Transitions.

These questions go beyond testing vocabulary or grammar rules. They assess your ability to understand how ideas relate to each other, how evidence supports claims, and how transitional language creates coherent, persuasive arguments. In the digital SAT format, you'll encounter these questions integrated throughout the Reading and Writing modules, requiring you to think critically about the structure and flow of various texts.

Understanding Expression of Ideas

Expression of Ideas questions ask you to think like a writer. You're not just comprehending what's written—you're evaluating how effectively ideas are communicated and determining the best ways to improve clarity, coherence, and impact. These questions recognize that good writing isn't just grammatically correct; it's strategically organized to achieve its purpose.

The SAT presents these concepts through two main question types:

Synthesis Questions: These ask you to integrate information from multiple sources or parts of a text, determining how ideas connect and support each other.

Transitions Questions: These focus on the words and phrases that link ideas, testing your understanding of logical relationships between sentences and paragraphs.

Both question types require you to consider context carefully. The best answer isn't just grammatically correct—it's the one that most effectively serves the text's purpose and maintains its logical flow.

Part A: Synthesis Questions

Synthesis questions represent one of the more challenging aspects of the SAT Reading and Writing section. They require you to pull together information from different sources or different parts of a text, understanding not just what each piece says individually, but how they work together to create meaning.

Understanding Synthesis

Synthesis involves combining separate elements to form a coherent whole. In writing, this means:

1. Connecting evidence to claims
2. Integrating quotations smoothly into text
3. Combining information from multiple sources
4. Drawing conclusions from various pieces of information
5. Showing how different ideas relate to each other

On the SAT, synthesis questions often present you with a passage that references research, data, or quotations, then asks you to complete the passage in a way that effectively integrates this information.

Types of Synthesis Questions

Integrating Evidence

These questions test your ability to incorporate supporting evidence into an argument effectively.

Example passage: "Recent studies have examined the impact of urban green spaces on mental health. Researcher Dr. Sarah Chen found that _____."

This finding supports the growing consensus that city planning should prioritize accessible parks and gardens."

Question: Which choice most effectively uses relevant information from the notes to complete the passage?

Notes:

1. Dr. Sarah Chen's 2023 study followed 1,000 urban residents for two years
2. Participants living within 10 minutes of green spaces reported 25% lower stress levels
3. The effect was most pronounced in densely populated neighborhoods
4. Chen concluded that "proximity to nature serves as a buffer against urban stressors"

Answer choices: (A) urban residents face numerous mental health challenges (B) participants living near green spaces reported significantly lower stress levels than those without nearby access to nature (C) her research was conducted over a two-year period (D) cities should have more parks

Analysis: Choice (B) is correct because it:

1. Directly supports the claim about mental health benefits
2. Provides specific information from the study
3. Creates a logical connection to the conclusion about city planning
4. Integrates smoothly with the surrounding context

Choices (A) and (D) are too general, while (C) provides study methodology that doesn't support the main argument.

Combining Multiple Sources

These questions require you to synthesize information from different texts or studies.

Example passage: "The debate over homework's effectiveness continues to evolve. While Thompson's 2024 study showed minimal academic benefits for elementary students, _____. These contrasting findings suggest that homework's value may depend significantly on students' developmental stages."

Question: Which choice most effectively synthesizes information from both studies mentioned?

Study summaries:

1. Thompson (2024): Elementary students (ages 6-11) showed no significant improvement in test scores with increased homework
2. Martinez (2024): High school students (ages 14-18) demonstrated improved critical thinking skills with 1-2 hours of daily homework

Answer choices: (A) Martinez found that older students benefited from moderate amounts of homework, particularly in developing analytical skills (B) researchers disagree about homework (C) Martinez's study was also conducted in 2024 (D) homework remains controversial among educators

Analysis: Choice (A) effectively:

1. Contrasts with Thompson's findings about elementary students
2. Provides specific information from Martinez's study
3. Sets up the conclusion about developmental stages
4. Maintains parallel structure with the Thompson reference

Drawing Conclusions

These questions ask you to complete a passage with an appropriate conclusion based on presented information.

Example passage: "A longitudinal study tracked the reading habits of 500 adults over ten years. Participants who read fiction regularly demonstrated increased empathy scores and improved ability to understand others' perspectives."

Meanwhile, those who primarily read non-fiction showed gains in factual knowledge but no significant change in empathy measures. _____"

Question: Which choice provides the most logical conclusion to the passage?

Answer choices: (A) Therefore, all adults should read more books. (B) This suggests that fiction reading may uniquely contribute to social-emotional development. (C) Non-fiction reading is clearly less valuable than fiction reading. (D) The study followed participants for a full decade.

Analysis: Choice (B) is correct because it:

1. Draws a reasonable conclusion from the evidence
2. Acknowledges the specific benefit of fiction without dismissing non-fiction
3. Uses tentative language ("may") appropriate for research findings
4. Provides closure while avoiding overgeneralization

Strategies for Synthesis Questions

Read All Available Information

Before attempting to answer, carefully read:

1. The incomplete passage
2. Any provided notes or source material
3. All answer choices

Understanding the full context is crucial for effective synthesis.

Identify the Purpose

Ask yourself:

1. What is the main claim or argument?
2. What kind of support does it need?

3. How do the pieces of information relate?

Evaluate Logical Flow

The correct answer should:

1. Connect smoothly with surrounding sentences
2. Support the passage's main point
3. Maintain appropriate tone and style
4. Avoid redundancy or irrelevance

Check for Completeness

Ensure your choice:

1. Uses relevant information from the sources
2. Doesn't leave logical gaps
3. Provides appropriate level of detail
4. Creates a coherent whole

Part B: Transitions Questions

Transitions are the bridges between ideas. They guide readers through your logic, showing how each new piece of information relates to what came before. The SAT tests your understanding of these crucial connectors through questions that ask you to choose the most appropriate transitional word or phrase for a given context.

Understanding Logical Relationships

Before mastering transitions, you must understand the logical relationships they express:

Addition/Continuation

These transitions add information or continue a line of thought:

1. Furthermore, Moreover, Additionally
2. Also, In addition, Besides
3. Similarly, Likewise, In the same way

Contrast/Opposition

These show differences or contradictions:

1. However, Nevertheless, Nonetheless
2. On the other hand, In contrast, Conversely
3. Although, Despite, While
4. Yet, Still, But

Cause and Effect

These show causal relationships:

1. Therefore, Thus, Consequently
2. As a result, For this reason, Accordingly
3. Because, Since, Due to
4. So, Hence, That's why

Example/Illustration

These introduce specific examples:

1. For example, For instance
2. Specifically, In particular

3. To illustrate, Namely
4. Such as, Including

Time/Sequence

These show chronological or logical order:

1. First, Second, Third
2. Then, Next, Subsequently
3. Meanwhile, Simultaneously
4. Finally, Ultimately, Eventually

Emphasis/Clarification

These highlight or clarify points:

1. Indeed, In fact, Actually
2. Clearly, Obviously, Certainly
3. More importantly, Above all
4. In other words, That is

Analyzing Transitions Questions

Transitions questions on the SAT require careful analysis of the logical relationship between ideas. Let's examine how these questions work:

Example passage: "Scientists have long known that honeybee populations are declining worldwide. _____, a new study reveals that wild bee species are disappearing at an even more alarming rate."

Question: Which choice provides the most logical transition?

Answer choices: (A) For example (B) However (C) Therefore (D) Moreover

Analysis: To determine the correct transition, examine the relationship between the two statements:

1. First statement: Honeybee populations are declining
2. Second statement: Wild bee species are disappearing even faster

The second statement adds related but more serious information. It doesn't contrast with the first statement, provide an example of it, or result from it. Instead, it builds upon the concern with additional worrying information.

Correct answer: (D) Moreover

This choice effectively indicates that the second statement adds to the concern expressed in the first, escalating the severity of the problem.

Common Transitions Patterns

Concession and Counter-argument

These questions often involve acknowledging one point before presenting a contrasting view.

Example passage: "Many assume that technology in classrooms automatically improves learning outcomes. _____, research shows that effectiveness depends entirely on implementation quality."

Correct transition: However/Nevertheless (showing contrast with the assumption)

Building an Argument

These involve adding layers of evidence or reasoning.

Example passage: "Urban farming reduces food transportation distances. _____, it provides green spaces in dense cities and creates community connections."

Correct transition: Additionally/Furthermore (adding more benefits)

Showing Consequences

These connect causes with their effects.

Example passage: "The new manufacturing process reduces waste by 40%. _____, the company expects to save \$2 million annually."

Correct transition: As a result/Consequently (showing the financial outcome)

Subtle Distinctions

The SAT often presents choices that seem similar but have important differences:

However vs. Nevertheless

1. **However:** Simple contrast
2. **Nevertheless:** Contrast with emphasis on the surprising or unexpected nature

Example: "The expedition faced severe weather conditions. _____, they reached the summit."

Better choice: Nevertheless (emphasizes achievement despite obstacles)

Therefore vs. Thus

1. **Therefore:** Formal conclusion from evidence
2. **Thus:** Can indicate result or manner

Example: "All mammals are warm-blooded. Whales are mammals. _____, whales are warm-blooded."

Better choice: Therefore (logical conclusion)

Furthermore vs. Moreover

1. **Furthermore:** Adds information of equal weight
2. **Moreover:** Adds information with slight emphasis

Both are often interchangeable, but context determines the better choice.

Transitions in Extended Passages

Some SAT questions test transitions between paragraphs or larger sections of text:

Example passage ending one paragraph: "...The experiment yielded unexpected results that challenged conventional theories."

Beginning of next paragraph: "_____, the research team decided to replicate the study with a larger sample size."

Answer choices: (A) In conclusion (B) For instance (C) In response to these findings (D) On the contrary

Analysis: Choice (C) effectively bridges the paragraphs by:

1. Acknowledging what came before ("these findings")
2. Explaining the logical connection (unexpected results led to replication)
3. Maintaining flow between paragraphs

Common Pitfalls

Overusing Certain Transitions

Students often default to common transitions like "however" or "therefore." The SAT rewards precision—choose the transition that best captures the specific relationship.

Ignoring Tone

Academic passages require formal transitions. "Besides" might work logically but "Furthermore" better matches formal tone.

Missing Subtle Relationships

Sometimes the relationship isn't obvious. Read carefully to understand whether ideas truly contrast, complement, or cause each other.

Integrated Practice: Combining Synthesis and Transitions

Real SAT passages often require both synthesis and transition skills:

Example complex passage: "Recent climate data has revealed accelerating changes in Arctic ice coverage. Marine biologist Dr. Amy Foster notes that '_____.', _____, indigenous communities who depend on stable ice conditions for hunting have had to adapt their traditional practices."

First blank (Synthesis): Which choice most effectively incorporates relevant information from Dr. Foster's research?

Research notes:

1. Arctic sea ice minimum has decreased by 13% per decade since 1979
2. Ice forms later and breaks up earlier each year
3. Polar bears now swim distances up to 400 miles between ice floes
4. Foster stated: "We're witnessing ecosystem changes that typically take millennia occurring within decades"

Best choice: "We're witnessing ecosystem changes that typically take millennia occurring within decades"

This directly supports the claim about accelerating changes and provides expert testimony.

Second blank (Transition): Which transition best connects the scientific findings to their human impact?

Best choice: "As a result of these rapid changes"

This transition clearly links the environmental changes to their consequences for human communities.

Strategies for Success

For Synthesis Questions

Pre-reading Strategy

1. Identify the main argument or purpose
2. Note what type of support is needed
3. Look for logical gaps that need filling

Active Integration

1. Don't just insert information—weave it into the fabric of the text
2. Ensure quoted material flows grammatically
3. Maintain consistent tone and style

Verification Method

1. Read the completed passage aloud (mentally)
2. Check that all parts work together coherently
3. Ensure no redundancy or contradiction

For Transitions Questions

Context Analysis

1. Read at least one full sentence before and after
2. Identify the logical relationship precisely
3. Consider tone and formality level

Elimination Strategy

1. Remove obviously wrong relationships first
2. Test remaining choices in context
3. Choose the most precise option

Double-check Technique

1. Substitute your choice into the passage
2. Verify the logical flow remains smooth
3. Ensure no unintended meanings arise

Time Management

Both question types require careful reading, but you can optimize your approach:

1. **First pass:** Quickly identify question type and key relationships
2. **Second pass:** Carefully evaluate top choices
3. **Final check:** Verify your answer maintains coherence

Aim to spend 45-60 seconds per question, allowing time for careful consideration without overthinking.

Common Question Formats

Synthesis Formats

Research Integration "The following passage is incomplete. Based on the provided research notes, which choice completes the passage most effectively?"

Multiple Source Combination "The writer wants to conclude the passage by synthesizing information from both studies mentioned. Which choice best accomplishes this goal?"

Evidence Selection "The writer needs to support the claim in the previous sentence. Which choice provides the most relevant evidence from the given data?"

Transitions Formats

Single Transition "Which choice provides the most logical transition at this point in the passage?"

Paragraph Connection "The writer wants to link the ideas in these two paragraphs. Which choice best accomplishes this goal?"

Relationship Identification "Which choice most accurately reflects the relationship between the two parts of the sentence?"

Practice Examples

Synthesis Practice

Passage: "The impact of social media on teenage mental health remains a contentious topic. A 2024 meta-analysis by Dr. Roberts examined 50 studies spanning 10 years. _____. This comprehensive review provides crucial context for ongoing policy debates."

Notes from Dr. Roberts' meta-analysis:

1. Analyzed studies from 2014-2024 involving 100,000+ teenagers
2. Found correlation between excessive use (4+ hours daily) and anxiety
3. Moderate use (1-2 hours) showed no significant negative effects
4. Some studies found positive effects for maintaining friendships
5. Roberts concluded: "The relationship is nuanced, depending heavily on usage patterns and content type"

Which choice most effectively synthesizes the key findings?

(A) The analysis involved a large number of participants (B) Roberts found that the effects of social media vary significantly based on how and how much

teenagers use these platforms (C) The studies spanned a full decade (D) Social media can be both helpful and harmful

Answer: (B) - This choice captures the nuanced nature of the findings and provides specific, relevant information that supports both the contentious nature mentioned and the policy debate context.

Transitions Practice

Passage: "Museums worldwide are reimagining their roles in the digital age. Virtual tours now allow global audiences to explore collections remotely. _____, many institutions worry that online experiences might reduce in-person visits."

Which transition best fits?

- (A) For example (B) Nevertheless
(C) Furthermore (D) Therefore

Answer: (B) - "Nevertheless" appropriately signals the contrast between the positive development (global access) and the concern (reduced physical visits).

Conclusion

Expression of Ideas questions—both Synthesis and Transitions—test essential communication skills that extend far beyond the SAT. These questions assess your ability to create coherent, well-supported arguments and to guide readers smoothly through complex ideas.

Success requires:

1. Careful attention to context and purpose
2. Understanding of logical relationships
3. Precision in language choice
4. Practice with various text types and topics



Remember that these skills directly transfer to college writing, where you'll need to synthesize research, integrate evidence, and create flowing arguments across multiple pages. Master these concepts for the SAT, and you'll build a foundation for effective academic and professional communication.

The key is to approach each question methodically: understand what's being asked, analyze the relationships between ideas, and choose the option that creates the most coherent and effective text. With practice, these decisions will become more intuitive, allowing you to work both accurately and efficiently through the Reading and Writing section.

Standard English Conventions

Standard English Conventions questions comprise approximately 26% of the SAT Reading and Writing section, appearing throughout both modules of the test.

The SAT has streamlined these questions to focus on the most essential grammar and usage rules that matter in college and professional writing. Unlike previous versions of the test, The SAT presents these questions in shorter, more focused passages that test one specific convention at a time.

This chapter will equip you with a systematic approach to these questions and deep knowledge of the grammar rules most frequently tested. You'll learn to recognize question types quickly, apply the appropriate rules, and avoid common traps. Most importantly, you'll develop the ability to hear what sounds right in formal written English—a skill that will serve you well beyond the SAT.

The Kaplan Method with Standard English Conventions Questions

The Kaplan Method provides a systematic approach to tackling Standard English Conventions questions efficiently and accurately. This method transforms what could be overwhelming grammar rules into a manageable, step-by-step process.

The Four-Step Approach

Step 1: Identify the Grammar Issue Read the sentence and underlined portion carefully. Look for:

1. Punctuation marks (or lack thereof)
2. Verb forms and tenses
3. Pronoun usage
4. Connecting words or phrases
5. Modifier placement

Step 2: Eliminate Obviously Wrong Answers Before analyzing deeply, eliminate choices that:

1. Create sentence fragments
2. Create run-on sentences
3. Introduce new errors
4. Change the meaning inappropriately

Step 3: Apply the Relevant Grammar Rule Once you've identified the issue, apply the specific rule:

1. For punctuation: Check what's being connected
2. For verbs: Find the subject and check agreement/tense
3. For pronouns: Identify the antecedent
4. For modifiers: Check what's being modified

Step 4: Reread with Your Choice Always plug your answer back into the sentence to ensure:

1. The sentence flows logically

2. No new errors are created
3. The meaning remains clear

Recognizing Question Types

The SAT uses consistent formatting to help you quickly identify what's being tested:

Punctuation Focus: Multiple answer choices differ primarily in punctuation

Verb Focus: Answer choices show different verb forms

Pronoun Focus: Choices offer different pronouns or pronoun forms
Connection Focus: Choices provide different transitional words or phrases

Time Management Strategy

Standard English Conventions questions should typically take 30-45 seconds each:

1. 10-15 seconds: Read and identify the issue
2. 15-20 seconds: Eliminate wrong answers and apply rules
3. 5-10 seconds: Verify your choice

If you're stuck after 60 seconds, make your best guess and move on.

Common Wrong Answer Traps

The "Sounds Fancy" Trap: Unnecessarily complex constructions that sound sophisticated but are incorrect
The Hypercorrection Trap: Fixing something that isn't broken while creating a new error
The Meaning Change Trap: Grammatically correct options that alter the intended meaning
The Redundancy Trap: Options that are grammatically correct but unnecessarily wordy

Practice with the Method

Example Passage: "The scientist carefully documented her findings in the laboratory notebook, _____ would prove essential when her colleagues attempted to replicate the experiment."

A) which B) that C) and which D) it

Applying the Method:

1. Identify: Need to connect two related clauses
2. Eliminate: D creates a run-on sentence
3. Apply: Non-restrictive clause about the notebook requires "which"
4. Verify: "which would prove essential" correctly modifies "notebook"

Answer: A

Sentence Structure: The Basics

Understanding sentence structure is fundamental to success on SAT Standard English Conventions questions. The SAT focuses on your ability to recognize and create grammatically complete sentences while avoiding fragments and run-ons.

Complete Sentences

A complete sentence must have:

1. A subject (who or what the sentence is about)
2. A predicate (what the subject does or is)
3. A complete thought

Example: Complete: "The research team analyzed the data."

1. Subject: The research team
2. Predicate: analyzed the data
3. Complete thought: Yes

Sentence Fragments

Fragments lack one of the essential elements. Common fragment types on the SAT:

Missing Subject: "Conducted the experiment in three phases."

Missing Verb: "The scientist with years of experience in molecular biology."

Dependent Clause Alone: "Although the results were promising."

SAT Example: "Marine biologists have discovered a new species of deep-sea fish. _____ in the Mariana Trench at depths exceeding 8,000 meters."

A) Living B) It lives C) Which lives D) Lives

Analysis: The second sentence needs a subject and complete verb. Only B provides both.

Run-On Sentences

Run-ons incorrectly join independent clauses. Two independent clauses cannot be connected with:

1. Nothing (comma splice)
2. Just a comma (fused sentence)
3. A comma and a word like "however" or "therefore"

Correct connections:

1. Period
2. Semicolon
3. Comma + coordinating conjunction (FANBOYS: for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so)
4. Semicolon + transitional phrase + comma

SAT Example: "The aurora borealis creates spectacular light displays in the northern sky, _____ it results from charged particles interacting with Earth's magnetic field."

A) sky, it B) sky it C) sky; it D) sky, and it

Analysis: Two independent clauses need proper connection. C (semicolon) or D (comma + coordinating conjunction) would work.

Dependent and Independent Clauses

Independent Clause: Can stand alone as a sentence "The experiment succeeded."

Dependent Clause: Cannot stand alone, begins with subordinating word "Because the experiment succeeded" "Which succeeded last week"

Subordinating conjunctions to recognize:

1. Time: when, while, after, before, until, since
2. Cause: because, since, as
3. Condition: if, unless, whether
4. Contrast: although, though, even though, whereas

Sentence Combining

The SAT tests your ability to combine sentences effectively:

Using Conjunctions: "The storm approached quickly. Residents evacuated immediately." → "The storm approached quickly, so residents evacuated immediately."

Using Subordination: "The storm approached quickly. Residents evacuated immediately." → "As the storm approached quickly, residents evacuated immediately."

Using Modifiers: "The storm approached quickly. It threatened coastal areas."
→ "The storm approaching quickly threatened coastal areas."

Practice Problems - Sentence Structure Basics

1. "Recent archaeological discoveries have shed new light on ancient civilizations, _____ these findings challenge previous assumptions about trade routes." A) civilizations, these findings B) civilizations these findings C) civilizations, however, these findings D) civilizations; these findings
2. "The novelist spent years researching historical documents. _____ to ensure accuracy in her portrayal of 18th-century London." A) She wanted B) Wanting C) Her goal was D) And wanted
3. "Although quantum computing offers revolutionary possibilities _____ practical applications remain limited by current technology." A) possibilities, B) possibilities; C) possibilities, but D) possibilities, its

Sentence Structure: Punctuation

Punctuation questions are among the most common on the SAT. The test focuses on essential punctuation rules that affect clarity and meaning in academic and professional writing.

Commas

Commas have specific, rule-based uses. Master these patterns:

Items in a Series: Use commas between items, including before the final "and" (Oxford comma) "The study examined cognitive, emotional, and social development."

Introductory Elements: Use a comma after introductory phrases or clauses "After analyzing the data, researchers drew several conclusions." "In 2023, the policy changed significantly."

Nonessential Elements: Use commas around information that could be removed "Dr. Chen, who pioneered the technique, will lead the workshop." "The solution, surprisingly, was quite simple."

Essential vs. Nonessential: Essential (no commas): "Students who completed the assignment earned extra credit." Nonessential (commas): "All students, who had worked hard, earned extra credit."

Common Comma Errors:

1. Don't use a comma between subject and verb
2. Don't use only one comma around a nonessential element
3. Don't use a comma before "that" in essential clauses

Semicolons

Semicolons have two main uses on the SAT:

Joining Independent Clauses: "The experiment failed; researchers learned valuable lessons."

Complex Lists: When items contain internal commas "The conference featured speakers from Tokyo, Japan; Sydney, Australia; and London, England."

Semicolon + Transitional Phrase: "The initial results were promising; however, further testing revealed flaws."

Common transitional phrases:

1. however, therefore, moreover, furthermore
2. consequently, nevertheless, otherwise
3. for example, in fact, on the other hand

Colons

Colons introduce or emphasize what follows:

Introducing a List: "The kit contains three essential items: gloves, goggles, and a lab coat."

Introducing an Explanation: "The team faced one major obstacle: funding."

Important Rule: What comes before a colon must be a complete sentence.

Wrong: "The ingredients are: flour, eggs, and milk." Right: "The recipe requires three ingredients: flour, eggs, and milk."

Dashes

The SAT typically tests the em dash (—), which can:

Set Off Nonessential Information: Like commas but with more emphasis
"The discovery—made entirely by accident—revolutionized the field."

Create Dramatic Pause: "The results were unexpected—revolutionary, even."

Replace Other Punctuation: Dashes can often substitute for commas, parentheses, or colons "The winner—after months of competition—was finally announced."

Apostrophes

Apostrophes show possession or create contractions:

Possession:

1. Singular: "the scientist's discovery"
2. Plural ending in s: "the scientists' discovery"
3. Plural not ending in s: "the children's playground"

Its vs. It's:

1. Its = possessive (The company increased its profits)
2. It's = it is or it has (It's been a successful year)

Common Possessive Mistakes:

1. Don't use apostrophes for plural nouns (wrong: "apple's for sale")

2. Don't confuse possessive pronouns (yours, hers, ours, theirs—no apostrophes)

Practice Problems - Punctuation

1. "The Amazon rainforest often called 'the lungs of the Earth' _____ produces approximately 20% of the world's oxygen." A) Earth', B) Earth,' C) Earth', D) Earth,'
2. "Researchers identified three factors affecting sleep quality _____ stress levels, screen time, and caffeine consumption." A) quality: B) quality; C) quality, D) quality—
3. "The museum's new exhibit features artifacts from ancient Egypt _____ interactive displays help visitors understand daily life in that era." A) Egypt, its B) Egypt; its C) Egypt, it's D) Egypt; it's

Agreement: Verbs

Verb agreement questions test whether verbs match their subjects in number and maintain consistent tense throughout a passage. The SAT often combines these concepts with complex sentence structures to increase difficulty.

Subject-Verb Agreement Basics

The fundamental rule: Singular subjects take singular verbs; plural subjects take plural verbs.

Simple Cases:

1. "The scientist examines the specimen." (singular)
2. "The scientists examine the specimen." (plural)

Present Tense Forms:

1. Singular: adds -s or -es (runs, watches, is, has)
2. Plural: base form (run, watch, are, have)

Tricky Subject-Verb Situations

Intervening Phrases: Ignore phrases between subject and verb "The collection of rare manuscripts *belongs* to the library." (Subject is "collection," not "manuscripts")

Compound Subjects:

1. Connected by "and": Usually plural "The professor and her assistant *are* conducting research."
2. Connected by "or/nor": Verb agrees with closer subject "Neither the students nor the teacher *was* aware." "Neither the teacher nor the students *were* aware."

Indefinite Pronouns:

1. Singular: everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, anyone, anybody, no one, nobody, each, either, neither "Everyone *has* submitted their assignment."
2. Plural: both, few, many, several "Several *have* submitted their assignments."
3. Variable: all, most, none, some (depends on context) "Most of the water *has* evaporated." (singular) "Most of the students *have* arrived." (plural)

Collective Nouns: Can be singular or plural depending on context

1. Acting as unit: "The committee *meets* monthly." (singular)
2. Acting as individuals: "The committee *disagree* on the issue." (plural)

Common collective nouns: team, group, family, jury, audience, staff

Inverted Sentences: Find the true subject "In the laboratory *are* several microscopes." (Subject is "microscopes," not "laboratory")

Verb Tense Consistency

The SAT requires logical tense progression within passages:

Same Time Frame: Keep tenses consistent "She *conducted* the experiment and *recorded* the results."

Different Time Frames: Change tenses logically "She *conducted* the experiment yesterday and *will present* the findings tomorrow."

Common Tense Patterns:

1. Past events: Simple past or past perfect
2. Ongoing past: Past continuous
3. General truths: Simple present
4. Future plans: Simple future or present continuous

Special Verb Forms

Subjunctive Mood: For hypothetical or contrary-to-fact situations "If I *were* you, I would reconsider." (not "was") "The professor recommended that each student *submit* a proposal." (not "submits")

Perfect Tenses: Show completed action

1. Present perfect: "has/have + past participle" (started in past, relevant to present)
2. Past perfect: "had + past participle" (completed before another past action)

SAT Example: "By the time the rescue team arrived, the hikers _____ a shelter."
A) build B) built C) had built D) have built

Analysis: Past perfect needed to show action completed before another past action.
Answer: C

Maintaining Parallel Structure

When listing actions, maintain consistent verb forms: "The program aims to *educate* students, *promote* awareness, and *encourage* participation."

Practice Problems - Verb Agreement

1. "The range of electromagnetic frequencies that _____ visible light represents only a tiny portion of the full spectrum." A) constitute B) constitutes C) have constituted D) are constituting
2. "Neither the original manuscript nor the early translations _____ survived to the present day." A) has B) have C) having D) to have
3. "The archaeological team discovered that ancient civilizations _____ sophisticated irrigation systems long before historians previously believed." A) develop B) developed C) had developed D) have developed

Agreement: Pronouns

Pronoun questions on The SAT test your ability to maintain clarity and consistency in writing. These questions often appear in passages where multiple people or things are discussed, requiring careful attention to antecedents.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement

Every pronoun must clearly refer to a specific noun (its antecedent) and agree in:

1. Number (singular/plural)
2. Gender (when applicable)
3. Person (first, second, third)

Clear Reference: "When Marie Curie won her second Nobel Prize, *she* became the first person to receive the award in two different sciences." (Pronoun "she" clearly refers to "Marie Curie")

Number Agreement

Singular Antecedents take singular pronouns: "Each student must submit *their* assignment by Friday." Note: "Their" is now widely accepted as a singular pronoun for gender-neutral reference on the SAT.

Plural Antecedents take plural pronouns: "The researchers published *their* findings in a peer-reviewed journal."

Compound Antecedents:

1. Joined by "and": Use plural pronoun "The director and the producer expressed *their* vision."
2. Joined by "or/nor": Pronoun agrees with closer antecedent "Neither the lead actor nor the supporting actors remembered *their* lines."

Pronoun Case

Pronouns change form based on their function:

Subject Case (I, you, he, she, it, we, they, who): "*She* and *I* will present the research."

Object Case (me, you, him, her, it, us, them, whom): "The award was given to *her* and *me*."

Possessive Case (my/mine, your/yours, his, her/hers, its, our/ours, their/theirs, whose): "The team celebrated *its* victory."

Common Case Errors:

1. "Between you and *me*" (not "I")
2. "The professor who/*whom* we respect" (who is subject of "we respect")
3. "*Whoever* arrives first" (not "whomever"—it's the subject of "arrives")

Ambiguous Pronoun Reference

The SAT often tests whether pronouns have clear, unambiguous antecedents:

Ambiguous: "When the mentor met with the student, she was nervous." (Who was nervous—the mentor or the student?)

Clear: "The student was nervous when she met with the mentor."

No Clear Antecedent: "In the report, it says that climate change is accelerating." ("It" has no clear antecedent)

Better: "The report says that climate change is accelerating."

Pronoun Consistency

Maintain consistent pronoun use throughout a passage:

Inconsistent: "When one begins a research project, you should develop a clear hypothesis."

Consistent: "When one begins a research project, one should develop a clear hypothesis." OR: "When you begin a research project, you should develop a clear hypothesis."

Relative Pronouns

Know when to use which relative pronoun:

Who/Whom: For people "The scientist *who* discovered the vaccine" "The scientist *whom* we interviewed"

Which: For things, nonessential clauses "The experiment, *which* took months to complete, yielded surprising results."

That: For things or people, essential clauses "The experiment *that* yielded surprising results took months to complete." "The students *that* participated earned extra credit."

Whose: Shows possession for people or things "The author *whose* book won the prize" "The building *whose* foundation cracked"

Special Pronoun Considerations

Demonstrative Pronouns (this, that, these, those): Must clearly refer to specific nouns "These findings support the hypothesis." (Clear what "these" refers to)

Indefinite Pronouns require careful agreement: "Everyone should bring *their* laptop." (accepted as gender-neutral) "Neither of the options is ideal; *both* have drawbacks." (different pronouns for different purposes)

Practice Problems - Pronouns

1. "The consulting firm submitted _____ proposal to the board of directors last week." A) their B) its C) it's D) there
2. "Neither the principal investigator nor the research assistants could explain why _____ had failed to detect the error." A) she B) he C) they D) one
3. "The software company announced a breakthrough in artificial intelligence, _____ they believe will revolutionize data analysis." A) that B) which C) whom D) whose

Agreement: Modifiers

Modifier questions test your ability to place descriptive words and phrases correctly to ensure clear, logical meaning. The SAT frequently includes these questions because modifier errors are common in student writing and can significantly affect clarity.

Understanding Modifiers

A modifier is any word, phrase, or clause that describes or limits another element in the sentence. Modifiers must be placed near what they modify to avoid confusion.

Types of Modifiers:

1. Single words: "The *exhausted* researcher finally went home."
2. Phrases: "*After working all night*, the researcher finally went home."
3. Clauses: "The researcher, *who had worked all night*, finally went home."

Dangling Modifiers

A dangling modifier doesn't logically modify any word in the sentence:

Dangling: "Running down the street, the bus was missed." (The bus wasn't running down the street)

Corrected: "Running down the street, Sarah missed the bus." (Now "running" correctly modifies "Sarah")

Common Dangling Modifier Patterns:

1. Opening participial phrases: "Having finished the experiment,..."
2. Opening infinitive phrases: "To succeed in science,..."
3. Opening prepositional phrases: "After years of research,..."

Always ask: Who or what is performing the action in the modifier?

Misplaced Modifiers

A misplaced modifier is too far from what it modifies, creating confusion:

Misplaced: "The professor gave a lecture about quantum physics in the auditorium." (Was quantum physics in the auditorium?)

Clear: "In the auditorium, the professor gave a lecture about quantum physics."

Limiting Modifiers (only, just, almost, nearly, even) need careful placement:

1. "Only the student solved the problem." (No one else solved it)

2. "The student only solved the problem." (Didn't do anything else)
3. "The student solved only the problem." (Solved nothing else)

Squinting Modifiers

These modifiers could modify either the word before or after:

Squinting: "Students who study frequently earn better grades." (Study frequently? Or frequently earn?)

Clear: "Students who frequently study earn better grades." OR: "Students who study earn better grades frequently."

Parallel Structure with Modifiers

When using multiple modifiers, maintain parallel structure:

Not Parallel: "The research was groundbreaking, comprehensive, and it challenged assumptions."

Parallel: "The research was groundbreaking, comprehensive, and challenging to conventional assumptions."

Comparative and Superlative Modifiers

Comparative (comparing two): -er or more "This method is *more efficient* than the traditional approach."

Superlative (comparing three or more): -est or most "This is the *most efficient* method we've tested."

Common Errors:

1. Double comparisons: "more better" (use "better")
2. Wrong form: "most unique" (unique is absolute—use "unique" or "very unusual")
3. Incomplete comparisons: "This solution is better." (Better than what?)

Absolute Modifiers

Some modifiers are absolute and cannot be compared:

1. unique, perfect, complete, fatal, final, supreme, ultimate

Wrong: "This is the most unique discovery." Right: "This is a unique discovery."

Modifier Placement Strategies

Beginning of Sentence: Introductory modifiers must modify the subject
"Concerned about climate change, scientists are developing new technologies."

Middle of Sentence: Place near what they modify "The scientists *carefully* analyzed the data." "The data *that had been collected over five years* revealed surprising patterns."

End of Sentence: Ensure clear connection "The team completed the project *using innovative methods.*"

Essential vs. Nonessential Modifiers

This distinction affects both meaning and punctuation:

Essential (no commas): Necessary to identify what's being discussed "Students *who completed the extra credit* received bonus points." (Only those students who did extra credit)

Nonessential (with commas): Additional information "The students, *who had worked hard all semester*, celebrated their success." (All students worked hard)

Practice Problems - Modifiers

1. "_____ the data for several hours, the pattern suddenly became clear to the research team." A) After analyzing B) Having analyzed C) Being analyzed D) To analyze
2. "The biologist discovered a new species of orchid exploring the rainforest, _____ had never been documented before." A) which B) that C) exploring the rainforest, which D) while exploring the rainforest that

3. "Of all the proposals submitted, the committee found Dr. Chen's to be ____." A) more comprehensive B) most comprehensive C) the most comprehensive D) the more comprehensive

Chapter Summary

Success with Standard English Conventions on the SAT requires both knowledge of rules and the ability to apply them quickly in context. The SAT focuses on the conventions that matter most in academic and professional writing.

Key Takeaways

The Kaplan Method:

1. Identify the grammar issue
2. Eliminate obviously wrong answers
3. Apply the relevant rule
4. Reread with your choice

Sentence Structure:

1. Complete sentences need subject + verb + complete thought
2. Avoid fragments and run-ons
3. Connect independent clauses properly
4. Use subordination effectively

Punctuation:

1. Commas separate items, set off nonessential elements, and follow introductory phrases
2. Semicolons join independent clauses or separate complex list items
3. Colons introduce lists or explanations after complete sentences

4. Dashes emphasize parenthetical information

Verb Agreement:

1. Subjects and verbs must agree in number
2. Ignore intervening phrases
3. Maintain consistent tense
4. Use parallel structure

Pronoun Agreement:

1. Pronouns must clearly refer to specific antecedents
2. Match number, gender, and person
3. Use correct case (subject/object/possessive)
4. Avoid ambiguous references

Modifiers:

1. Place modifiers near what they modify
2. Avoid dangling and misplaced modifiers
3. Maintain parallel structure
4. Use correct comparative and superlative forms

Test Day Reminders

1. Trust your ear but verify with rules
2. Read the full sentence with your answer choice
3. Watch for changes in meaning
4. When in doubt, choose the clearest, most concise option

5. Remember that "NO CHANGE" is correct about 25% of the time

The Standard English Conventions tested on the SAT reflect real-world writing standards. Mastering these concepts will improve not only your test score but also your academic writing overall.

PART 4 — AI for the SAT

How to Use AI for SAT Math Success

Now, with the power of Artificial Intelligence, SAT prep can be smarter, faster, and more personalized.

The Role of AI in Modern Test Prep

1. Adaptive Learning

AI-powered platforms analyze your strengths and weaknesses in real-time. For example, after solving a few linear equation problems, the system can determine whether you struggle with isolating variables or interpreting word problems—and then give you targeted practice.

2. Instant Feedback

Unlike textbooks or practice workbooks, AI tools provide immediate correction and explanation. You don't have to wait for a tutor or spend time looking up solutions. This real-time feedback loop helps reinforce correct methods and quickly eliminate misconceptions.

3. 24/7 Personal Tutor

Tools like ChatGPT, Mammoth Club or custom SAT bots powered by OpenAI or Gemini can act as on-demand tutors. You can ask questions like:



1. “Explain how to solve a system of equations using substitution.”
2. “Why can’t I divide by zero in rational expressions?”
3. “Give me a harder version of this quadratic problem.”

Train for SAT Math Questions with AI

Step 1: Choose Your AI Tool

Start with accessible AI platforms. Some reliable options include:

1. **ChatGPT** (customized SAT tutor prompts)
2. **Mammoth Club with AI integrations**

Many of these tools are free or offer trial versions that are sufficient for effective studying.

Step 2: Build an Algebra Skills Checklist

Divide your SAT Math preparation into core topics!

Use AI to generate practice problems or explanations for each topic. You can prompt ChatGPT with:

- “Create 5 linear equation SAT-style questions with increasing difficulty.”
“Explain the difference between a linear function and an exponential function.”

Step 3: Simulate the SAT Algebra Experience

Ask your AI to give you mixed-topic practice sets under timed conditions. Example prompt:

- “Generate a 25-minute SAT-style Algebra section with 15 questions. Include a scoring rubric.”

Some AI tools can even keep track of your time, simulate exam conditions, and highlight pacing issues.

AI Prompt Examples for SAT Math Practice

Here are some useful prompts you can use in ChatGPT or similar platforms:

1. “Give me 10 practice questions on solving quadratic equations by factoring. Include detailed solutions.”
2. “Explain step-by-step how to find the vertex of a parabola given in standard form.”
3. “Create a SAT-style word problem involving distance = rate \times time and provide 4 answer choices.”
4. “Simulate a math tutoring session where I keep getting confused about how to graph inequalities.”

By interacting naturally with the AI, you turn studying into an engaging conversation rather than a solo struggle.

Personalizing Your Practice

One of the key benefits of AI is **individualization**. After each session, reflect on:

1. Which types of problems you solved quickly
2. Where you made careless mistakes
3. Which concepts were unfamiliar or unclear

Then return to your AI assistant with focused follow-ups:

“I made mistakes on absolute value equations—give me a lesson and quiz.”

AI will adapt to your needs, adjusting the content difficulty, format, and explanations.

Track Progress with AI Analytics

Some AI-powered platforms offer dashboards and progress tracking:

1. **Daily streaks**
2. **Mastery levels by topic**
3. **Weakness detection**

If your platform supports it, set goals like “Master linear systems by Friday” and track how your AI tutor helps you get there. Even a simple spreadsheet or progress journal can be used alongside AI prompts.

Bonus: Create Your Own SAT Math Question Bank with AI

You can build a personalized, regenerable question bank using AI. For example:

1. Ask ChatGPT to generate 50 practice questions categorized by topic.
2. Save them in Google Sheets or Notion.
3. Use conditional formatting to mark questions you've mastered.
4. Periodically return to ChatGPT to regenerate questions you got wrong, but with new numbers or scenarios.

This dynamic system ensures you're never limited to a static set of problems.

Final Thoughts: Make AI Your SAT Study Partner

AI isn't just a tool—it's your study companion. It can challenge you, clarify confusion, and keep you motivated through dynamic interaction. When it comes to SAT Algebra, consistent practice with AI assistance can dramatically speed up learning and sharpen your accuracy.

Train smart. Let AI guide your journey—and conquer the Algebra section with confidence.

How to Use AI for SAT Reading and Writing Success

Mastering the SAT Reading and Writing section can seem daunting, but with the strategic use of artificial intelligence (AI), you can simplify and supercharge your preparation. The latest SAT emphasizes real-world relevance, concise evidence interpretation, and nuanced understanding of text, making AI an ideal tool for tailored and effective training.

Train for SAT Reading and Writing Questions with AI

AI tools can help you sharpen the critical skills required for SAT Reading and Writing, including evidence-based analysis, command of grammar, style, punctuation, and clarity. Leveraging AI ensures personalized feedback, immediate error detection, and adaptive practice, optimizing your study efficiency.

Harness AI for Personalized Practice

AI-powered practice platforms learn from your strengths and weaknesses, creating a customized study plan that targets areas needing improvement. For SAT Reading, these tools can dynamically select passages from literature, historical documents, social sciences, and sciences to ensure a broad yet targeted practice experience.

For example, you might engage with an AI-powered platform that:

- Presents tailored reading passages based on your past performance.
- Highlights subtle nuances in texts that frequently appear in SAT questions.

- Offers instant analysis and explanations for correct and incorrect answers.

Deepen Reading Comprehension with AI-Driven Insights

AI can analyze large datasets of SAT questions and texts, helping identify common patterns and question types such as main idea identification, evidence pairing, inference making, and vocabulary in context. Using AI, you can swiftly recognize complex textual relationships and interpret author's intent—crucial skills for the latest SAT.

A practical approach includes:

- Using AI-generated summaries to practice quickly identifying central ideas.
- Leveraging AI-driven inference practice, helping you predict and interpret subtle textual clues.
- Engaging with AI tools that explain intricate reasoning processes behind SAT-style questions.

Strengthen Writing Skills with Instant Feedback

AI grammar and style-checking software instantly identifies and explains grammatical errors, stylistic weaknesses, and punctuation issues, aligning perfectly with SAT Writing requirements. Regularly interacting with these tools will drastically reduce your error rate.

When you are answering practice questions, AI can:

- Provide real-time corrections and style suggestions.
- Clarify grammar rules and their application in various contexts.
- Offer SAT-specific writing strategies for coherence, conciseness, and clarity.

Continuous Progress with Adaptive Learning

The strength of AI lies in continuous adaptation. As you progress, AI adapts questions and content difficulty dynamically, ensuring you're consistently

challenged without becoming overwhelmed. Adaptive learning is especially beneficial for maintaining momentum and motivation.

You can benefit by:

- Reviewing regularly updated performance analytics provided by AI platforms.
- Adjusting your learning targets based on real-time feedback.
- Focusing intensively on weak areas to see tangible improvements quickly.

Practical Tips for Effective AI Integration

- **Consistency is key:** Daily short sessions with AI-based tools yield better results than sporadic, prolonged study sessions.
- **Review explanations:** Always carefully review AI-generated explanations for answers, especially for questions you answered incorrectly.
- **Combine methods:** Supplement AI practice with traditional SAT practice tests for balanced preparation.

AI can truly revolutionize your SAT Reading and Writing preparation, transforming uncertainty into mastery. With personalized practice, deep comprehension strategies, instant feedback, and adaptive learning, AI is your powerful ally for SAT success.

PART 5 - Practice Exam

Try to complete these in just 2 hours and 15 minutes, excluding a 10-minute break halfway.

SAT Math Questions

Linear Equations and Graphs (3 Questions)

Question 1:

Which equation is parallel to $y = 4x - 2$ and passes through $(1, 3)$?

- A) $y = 4x + 3$
- B) $y = 4x - 1$
- C) $y = -\frac{1}{4}x + 3$
- D) $y = -4x + 7$

Question 2:

The line $3x + ky = 12$ has a slope of -2 . Find k .

- A) 6
- B) 3
- C) -2
- D) $\frac{3}{2}$

Question 3:

What is the x -intercept of the line $y = 2x - 8$?

- A) 8
- B) -4
- C) 4
- D) -8

Systems of Linear Equations (3 Questions)

Question 4:

Solve this system for y :

$$\begin{aligned}y &= 3x - 4 \\ 2x + y &= 6\end{aligned}$$

- A) 2
- B) 0

- C) -2
- D) 4

Question 5:

Solve for x in the system:

$$3x + 2y = 10$$

$$x - y = -2$$

- A) 0
- B) 1
- C) 2
- D) 4

Question 6:

The system below has infinitely many solutions:

$$ax + by = 15$$

$$2x + 6y = 30$$

If $b = 6$, what is the value of a ?

- A) 3
- B) 2
- C) 4
- D) 5

Inequalities (2 Questions)**Question 7:**

Solve the inequality: $3(x - 4) \geq 6$.

- A) $x \leq 2$
- B) $x \geq 2$
- C) $x \leq 6$
- D) $x \geq 6$

Question 8:

If $2x - 4 < 8$, what is the largest integer value possible for x ?

- A) 4
- B) 5
- C) 6
- D) 7

Linear Functions (3 Questions)

Question 9:

A linear function is given by $f(x) = mx + b$. If $f(1) = 5$ and $f(4) = 17$, find m .

- A) 3
- B) 4
- C) 5
- D) 6

Question 10:

Find the y -intercept of the function $g(x) = -2x + 7$.

- A) (7,0)
- B) (0,7)
- C) (-2,7)
- D) (7,-2)

Question 11:

A linear function $h(x)$ passes through the points $(-2,0)$ and $(0,4)$. Which equation describes $h(x)$?

- A) $h(x) = 2x + 4$
- B) $h(x) = 2x - 4$
- C) $h(x) = -2x + 4$
- D) $h(x) = -2x - 4$

Rates, Ratios, Proportions, Percents, and Units (4 Questions)

Question 12:

A factory produces 60 widgets every 15 minutes. How many widgets does it produce in 2 hours?

- A) 240
- B) 360
- C) 480
- D) 600

Question 13:

A recipe uses a ratio of 2 cups sugar to 5 cups flour. How many cups of sugar are needed for 20 cups flour?

- A) 4
- B) 6
- C) 8
- D) 10

Question 14:

A car travels 150 kilometers in 3 hours. What is the average speed in meters per second? (Note: 1 kilometer = 1,000 meters)

- A) 13.89
- B) 15.00
- C) 16.67
- D) 18.52

Question 15:

A jacket originally priced at \$120 is on sale at a 25% discount. What is the sale price?

- A) \$90
- B) \$95
- C) \$100
- D) \$105

Tables, Statistics, and Probability (4 Questions)

Question 16:

The table shows how many books students read in a month:

| Books | Students |
|-------|----------|
| 0 | 5 |
| 1 | 12 |
| 2 | 18 |
| 3 | 10 |
| 4 | 5 |

What is the average number of books read per student?

- A) 1.8
- B) 2.0
- C) 2.1
- D) 2.2

Question 17:

In a survey, 60% preferred tea, and the remaining preferred coffee. If 300 people were surveyed, how many preferred coffee?

- A) 120
- B) 150
- C) 180
- D) 200

Question 18:

A bag contains 5 red, 3 blue, and 2 green marbles. What is the probability of not drawing a red marble?

- A) 0.2
- B) 0.3
- C) 0.5
- D) 0.6

Question 19:

Five students scored 78, 85, 92, 85, and 90 on a test. What is the median score?

- A) 85
- B) 86
- C) 88
- D) 90

Scatterplots (3 Questions)**Question 20:**

A scatterplot shows a positive linear relationship between hours studied and test scores. What does this indicate?

- A) As study time increases, scores decrease.
- B) As study time increases, scores increase.
- C) There is no relationship between study time and scores.
- D) Scores remain constant regardless of study time.

Question 21:

On a scatterplot, data points form a curved upward pattern. What type of model best fits this pattern?

- A) Linear
- B) Quadratic
- C) Exponential
- D) Logarithmic

Question 22:

A scatterplot shows a negative correlation between hours watching TV and academic grades. Which is the best interpretation?

- A) More TV watching relates to higher grades.
- B) More TV watching relates to lower grades.
- C) There is no connection between TV watching and grades.
- D) Grades influence TV watching habits.

Absolute Value and Nonlinear Functions (Questions 23–26)

23.

If $|2x - 5| = 9$, what are the possible values of x ?

24.

Which describes the vertex of the function $f(x) = |x + 3| - 2$?

25.

Solve for x : $|x - 4| + 3 = 7$.

26.

If $f(x) = |x|$ and $g(x) = x^2$, find all values of x such that $f(x) = g(x)$.

Exponents, Radicals, Polynomials, and Rational Expressions (Questions 27–30)

27.

Simplify the expression: $(3x^2)^3$

28.

If $\sqrt{x} = 5$, find the value of x .

29.

Simplify completely: $(2x^2 - 8) / (x - 2)$

30.

Which expression is equivalent to $1/\sqrt{2}$?

Quadratics (Questions 31–33)

31.

Solve for x : $x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$.

32.

Find the vertex of the parabola $y = x^2 - 6x + 8$.

33.

If the quadratic equation $x^2 + bx + c = 0$ has roots 3 and -4, find the value of b.

34:

A student is solving a quadratic equation:

$$2x^2 - 5x + 3 = 0$$

What are the solutions?

To solve, factor the expression on the left side so it equals zero.

A) $x = -3$ and $x = -0.5$

B) $x = 1$ and $x = 1.5$

C) $x = 3$ and $x = 0.5$

D) $x = -1$ and $x = -1.5$

Geometry (5 Questions)

Question 35:

Triangle ABC has angles measuring 45° and 55° . What is the measure of the third angle?

A) 45°

B) 70°

C) 80°

D) 90°

Question 36:

A circle has a circumference of 24π inches. Find the diameter.

A) 6 inches

B) 12 inches

C) 24 inches

D) 48 inches

Question 37:

Rectangle ABCD has a length of 12 units and a width of 5 units. Find the length of diagonal AC.

- A) 7 units
- B) 13 units
- C) 15 units
- D) 17 units

Question 38:

A regular hexagon has a perimeter of 72 cm. Find the length of each side.

- A) 9 cm
- B) 10 cm
- C) 12 cm
- D) 14 cm

Question 39:

A right triangle has an area of 40 square units, and one leg measures 8 units. Find the length of the other leg.

- A) 5 units
- B) 8 units
- C) 10 units
- D) 12 units

Trigonometry: Sine, Cosine, Tangent (6 Questions)

Question 40:

In a right triangle, angle X measures 30° . The side opposite angle X is 4 units. Find the hypotenuse length.

- A) 2 units
- B) 4 units
- C) 8 units
- D) 12 units

Question 41:

What is $\sin(90^\circ)$?

- A) 0
- B) 0.5
- C) 1
- D) Undefined

Question 42:

In a right triangle, if tangent of angle $\theta = 3/4$, what is $\sin(\theta)$?

- A) $3/4$
- B) $3/5$
- C) $4/5$
- D) $5/4$

Question 43:

Which expression is equivalent to $\cos(60^\circ)$?

- A) $\sin(30^\circ)$
- B) $\sin(45^\circ)$
- C) $\tan(30^\circ)$
- D) $\tan(60^\circ)$

Question 44:

In a right triangle, the adjacent side to angle A is 6 units and the hypotenuse is 10 units. What is $\cos(A)$?

- A) $3/5$
- B) $4/5$
- C) $5/3$
- D) $5/4$

Question 45:

Angle Y is acute, and $\sin(Y) = 7/25$. If the hypotenuse is 25 units, what is the length of the adjacent side to angle Y?

- A) 7 units
- B) 18 units
- C) 24 units
- D) 25 units

SAT Reading and Writing Questions

Passage for Questions 1-8:

(Adapted from an environmental science article)

In recent years, urban planners have increasingly focused on creating green spaces within cities, aiming to improve air quality and public health. Researchers studying cities like Tokyo and New York found significant reductions in air pollutants in areas near large parks. In Tokyo, neighborhoods adjacent to Ueno Park experienced notably lower levels of nitrogen dioxide compared to districts farther away from green spaces. Similarly, residents living near Central Park in New York reported fewer respiratory health issues, according to recent health department surveys.

However, critics argue these green projects may unintentionally raise property values, leading to gentrification. For instance, a study of San Francisco's Mission District revealed that rental prices rose dramatically after new green spaces opened, displacing long-time residents. Urban planners, therefore, face the challenge of balancing environmental and social considerations when designing green infrastructure.

Main Idea Questions:

1. What is the primary focus of the passage?
A) Negative impacts of urban parks
B) Comparing Tokyo and New York parks
C) Challenges of integrating green spaces in cities
D) Health benefits of green infrastructure in cities

Detail Questions:

2. According to the passage, residents near Central Park reported:
A) Higher property prices
B) Increased air pollution

- C) Fewer respiratory health problems
- D) More public health surveys

3. The San Francisco study cited in the passage primarily addressed:

- A) Urban pollution levels
- B) Gentrification and displacement
- C) Public health improvements
- D) Comparison to New York's parks

Command of Evidence Questions (Textual):

4. Which sentence provides the best textual evidence supporting the idea that green spaces improve air quality?

- A) "Urban planners have increasingly focused on creating green spaces within cities."
- B) "In Tokyo, neighborhoods adjacent to Ueno Park experienced notably lower levels of nitrogen dioxide."
- C) "Critics argue these green projects may unintentionally raise property values."
- D) "Residents living near Central Park reported fewer respiratory health issues."

5. Which sentence best supports the argument that green spaces could negatively impact local residents economically?

- A) "Researchers studying cities like Tokyo and New York found significant reductions in air pollutants."
- B) "Urban planners face the challenge of balancing environmental and social considerations."
- C) "Rental prices rose dramatically after new green spaces opened, displacing long-time residents."
- D) "Residents living near Central Park reported fewer respiratory health issues."

Command of Evidence Questions (Quantitative):

6. According to quantitative evidence from Tokyo, nitrogen dioxide levels:

- A) Increased near Ueno Park
- B) Decreased in neighborhoods close to Ueno Park

- C) Were consistent throughout Tokyo
- D) Increased in Central Tokyo districts

7. Based on evidence from New York, what is the health trend near Central Park?

- A) Respiratory issues increased significantly.
- B) Residents reported no changes in health.
- C) Respiratory health improved notably.
- D) Surveys showed no correlation.

Inference Questions:

8. What can reasonably be inferred about urban planners' considerations from the passage?

- A) They prioritize environmental benefits over social impacts.
- B) They rarely consider economic impacts of green spaces.
- C) They must consider multiple factors including social equity.
- D) They disregard health benefits from green spaces.

Passage for Questions 9-14:

(Adapted from a historical analysis)

The transcontinental railroad, completed in 1869, fundamentally altered American society. The railroad drastically reduced coast-to-coast travel time, connecting previously isolated communities. Before its completion, traveling from New York to California took months; afterward, the journey lasted merely days. This connectivity accelerated economic growth and settlement in the West, contributing to rapid industrialization.

Nevertheless, the railroad's construction had severe consequences, especially for Native American tribes, whose lands and livelihoods were devastated. Buffalo populations, crucial for many tribes' survival, diminished dramatically due to railroad expansion and hunting activities encouraged by railroad companies. Historians acknowledge this era as one of complex contrasts, reflecting immense progress and profound loss.

Main Idea Questions:

9. The main point of the passage is that the transcontinental railroad:

- A) Primarily benefited industrial growth.
- B) Caused extensive harm without benefits.
- C) Had both positive and negative impacts on society.
- D) Focused mainly on transportation efficiency.

Detail Questions:

10. Before the railroad's completion, coast-to-coast travel time was approximately:

- A) Days
- B) Weeks
- C) Months
- D) Years

11. According to the passage, buffalo populations:

- A) Increased due to railroad expansion
- B) Were unaffected by the railroad
- C) Decreased dramatically after railroad construction
- D) Were conserved by railroad companies

Command of Evidence Questions (Textual):

12. Which statement best supports the negative consequences mentioned for Native Americans?

- A) "The railroad drastically reduced coast-to-coast travel time."
- B) "Buffalo populations diminished dramatically due to railroad expansion."
- C) "The journey lasted merely days."
- D) "Historians acknowledge this era as one of complex contrasts."

Command of Evidence Questions (Quantitative):

13. Quantitative evidence from the passage supports that the railroad:

- A) Had minimal effect on travel times
- B) Increased travel time significantly
- C) Reduced cross-country travel time from months to days
- D) Caused minimal economic change

Inference Questions:

14. It can be inferred from the passage that historians view the railroad's impact as:

- A) Exclusively positive
- B) Completely negative
- C) Entirely economic in nature
- D) Both progressive and problematic

Question 15:

In the sentence below, what does the word “yielded” most nearly mean?

“Despite intense resistance, the committee finally **yielded** to public pressure and revised the proposal.”

- A) Produced
- B) Gave in
- C) Created
- D) Delayed

Question 16:

In the following sentence, what is the best replacement for the word “robust” to maintain the tone and meaning?

“The scientist presented a **robust** argument backed by years of data.”

- A) Brief
- B) Strong
- C) Simple
- D) Cautious

Question 17:

In the sentence below, choose the word that best maintains the formal tone of the passage:

“The report **talks about** the company’s goals for reducing emissions.”

- A) Discusses
- B) Chats about
- C) Argues
- D) Announces

Question 18:

What does the word “exploit” most nearly mean in this sentence?

“The new software allows users to **exploit** a loophole in the billing system.”

- A) Fix
- B) Take advantage of
- C) Ignore
- D) Avoid

Question 19:

Which word most accurately completes the sentence?

“While the author's tone is critical, it never becomes openly _____.”

- A) Hostile
- B) Sarcastic
- C) Biased
- D) Analytical

Craft and Structure – Purpose (5 Questions)

Question 20:

What is the main purpose of the sentence below?

“To clarify the process, the researcher provided a step-by-step diagram of the experiment.”

- A) To contradict an earlier statement
- B) To emphasize a potential flaw
- C) To explain a concept more clearly
- D) To introduce a new theory

Question 21:

Why does the author include the following sentence?

“Many of the city’s landmarks were built during the 19th century, a time of rapid industrial expansion.”

- A) To provide historical background
- B) To challenge modern architecture
- C) To highlight recent developments
- D) To introduce a counterpoint

Question 22:

What is the most likely purpose of the sentence?

“This finding challenges the long-held belief that memory loss is inevitable with age.”

- A) To question the reliability of the study
- B) To introduce a widely accepted fact
- C) To suggest an alternative explanation
- D) To highlight a surprising discovery

Question 23:

What is the author’s main purpose in stating:

“Although critics dismissed the novel as overly sentimental, it sold millions of copies.”

- A) To praise the critics’ perspective
- B) To point out the novel’s commercial success
- C) To compare two novels
- D) To criticize the public’s taste in books

Question 24:

What is the most likely reason the author includes the phrase:

“Even more troubling, the study did not control for key variables.”

- A) To emphasize a significant limitation
- B) To suggest the study’s findings are definitive

- C) To summarize a list of problems
- D) To introduce a new method

Craft and Structure – Connections (4 Questions)

Question 25:

Which choice best describes the relationship between the two sentences?

“The company reported record profits in the second quarter. As a result, it plans to expand its operations overseas.”

- A) Contrast
- B) Cause and effect
- C) Comparison
- D) Clarification

Question 26:

Which choice most logically completes the sentence?

“The new policy has received widespread praise from environmentalists; _____, some industry leaders have expressed concerns about implementation costs.”

- A) similarly
- B) meanwhile
- C) therefore
- D) in contrast

Question 27:

Which of the following best describes how the second sentence relates to the first?

“Some researchers argue that artificial intelligence will create more jobs than it replaces. Others, however, warn of mass unemployment.”

- A) It offers a personal example
- B) It expands on the claim
- C) It presents an opposing viewpoint
- D) It clarifies a definition

Question 28:

Which transition word best connects the two sentences?

“The initial results were inconclusive. _____, the team decided to run additional tests.”

- A) Nevertheless
- B) Meanwhile
- C) As a result
- D) In contrast

Questions 29–35: Transitions**29.**

It has long been thought that humans first crossed a land bridge into the Americas approximately 13,000 years ago. _____ based on radiocarbon dating of samples uncovered in Mexico, a research team recently suggested that humans may have arrived more than 30,000 years ago—much earlier than previously thought.

- A) As a result
- B) Similarly
- C) However
- D) In conclusion

30.

A 2017 study of sign language learners tested the role of iconicity—the similarity of a sign to the thing it represents—in language acquisition. The study found that the greater the iconicity of a sign, the more likely it was to have been learned. _____ the correlation between acquisition and iconicity was lower than that between acquisition and another factor studied: sign frequency.

- A) In fact
- B) In other words
- C) Granted
- D) As a result

31.

Alexander Lawrence Posey (1873–1908) varied his focus and tone depending on the genre in which he was writing. In his poetry, he used heartfelt language to

evoke the beauty and peacefulness of his natural surroundings; in his journalism, _____ he employed humor and satire to comment on political issues affecting his Muskogee Creek community.

- A) by contrast
- B) granted
- C) that is
- D) similarly

32.

Reforestation efforts, while undeniably valuable, often result in forests with limited biodiversity. _____ care should be taken to plant a wide variety of native flora in depleted woodlands.

- A) However
- B) Accordingly
- C) Nevertheless
- D) Furthermore

33.

The "Gordie Howe hat trick," an unofficial statistic in which a hockey player scores a goal, records an assist, and gets in a fight all in the same game, is named after hockey great Gordie Howe. _____ Howe only achieved this feat twice in his professional career, far fewer times than many other players.

- A) However
- B) Therefore
- C) Afterwards
- D) As a result

34.

Justine refuses to continue the family legacy of bull-riding _____ the rodeo judges permit her to ride the same-sized bull that her father rode.

- A) unless
- B) and
- C) provided that
- D) instead

35.

In 1892, Americans wanted a public structure to rival the Eiffel Tower, _____ an engineer named George Ferris designed the Ferris wheel.

- A) for
- B) although
- C) so
- D) or

Questions 36–42: Synthesis

36.

While researching a topic, a student has taken the following notes:

1. The painter Frida Kahlo is one of the most influential artists of the twentieth century.
2. She was born in Coyoacán, Mexico, in 1907.
3. She is best known for her vivid and richly symbolic self-portraits.
4. *The Two Fridas* (1939) features two versions of Kahlo sitting together.
5. One version wears a European-style dress and the other a traditional Tehuana dress.

The student wants to introduce Kahlo to an audience unfamiliar with the artist. Which choice most effectively uses the notes to accomplish this goal?

- A) Frida Kahlo, born in 1907 in Coyoacán, Mexico, is renowned for her vivid self-portraits, such as *The Two Fridas*, which depicts two versions of herself in different cultural attire.
- B) *The Two Fridas* (1939) shows two versions of Frida Kahlo sitting together, one in a European-style dress and the other in a traditional Tehuana dress.
- C) Frida Kahlo's self-portraits are known for their vivid symbolism, with *The Two Fridas* being a notable example.
- D) Born in Coyoacán, Mexico, in 1907, Frida Kahlo is one of the most influential artists of the twentieth century.

37.

A student is writing an essay on the impact of social media on communication. The student wants to include a sentence that introduces the idea that social media has both positive and negative effects. Which choice best accomplishes this goal?

- A) Social media platforms have revolutionized the way we connect, offering instant communication across the globe.
- B) While social media has enhanced our ability to communicate, it has also introduced challenges that affect interpersonal relationships.
- C) The rise of social media has led to increased screen time among users of all ages.
- D) Many people use social media to stay in touch with friends and family.

38.

A student is writing a report on renewable energy sources. The student wants to emphasize the importance of solar energy in reducing carbon emissions. Which choice best achieves this purpose?

- A) Solar panels are increasingly being installed on rooftops in urban areas.
- B) Solar energy is a renewable resource that can help reduce our reliance on fossil fuels.
- C) Utilizing solar energy significantly decreases carbon emissions, making it a crucial component in combating climate change.
- D) The cost of solar panels has decreased over the past decade, making them more accessible.

39.

A student is preparing a presentation on the benefits of reading. The student wants to highlight how reading can improve empathy. Which choice best supports this point?

- A) Reading fiction allows individuals to experience diverse perspectives, enhancing their ability to empathize with others.
- B) Many people enjoy reading mystery novels during their leisure time.
- C) Libraries offer a wide range of books suitable for all age groups.
- D) Reading is a popular hobby among people of various backgrounds.

40.

A student is writing an article about the effects of sleep deprivation on academic

performance. The student wants to introduce a statistic to support the claim that lack of sleep negatively impacts students. Which choice best accomplishes this?

- A) Many students report feeling tired during morning classes.
- B) Studies have shown that students who sleep less than six hours a night have lower GPA scores compared to those who sleep eight hours.
- C) Some students stay up late to complete homework assignments.
- D) Sleep patterns vary among high school and college students.

41.

A student is drafting a paragraph about the importance of exercise for mental health. The student wants to include a sentence that provides evidence supporting this claim. Which choice best fulfills this requirement?

- A) Regular physical activity has been linked to reduced symptoms of depression and anxiety.
- B) Many people go to the gym to stay fit.
- C) Exercise routines can vary depending on individual preferences.
- D) Some prefer outdoor activities over indoor workouts.

42.

A student is composing an essay on the impact of technology on education. The student wants to include a sentence that introduces the idea that technology can both aid and hinder learning. Which choice best achieves this?

- A) Technology has introduced new tools that make learning more interactive.
- B) While technology offers innovative educational resources, it can also lead to distractions that impede learning.
- C) Many schools have integrated tablets into their classrooms.
- D) Online courses are becoming more popular among students.

Standard English Conventions – Sentence Structure: The Basics (3 Questions)

43. Which revision of the sentence corrects the sentence fragment?

“Because the report was incomplete.”

- A) The report was incomplete.
- B) Because the report was incomplete, it was rejected.
- C) The report incomplete.
- D) It rejected because the report incomplete.

44. Which sentence is grammatically correct?

- A) Running through the park, the rain started falling.
- B) Because he studied hard. He passed the exam.
- C) She opened the window, letting in fresh air.
- D) To get to the store. You have to cross the street.

45. Which version best joins the two independent clauses?

“The experiment failed. The equipment was faulty.”

- A) The experiment failed the equipment was faulty.
- B) The experiment failed, and the equipment was faulty.
- C) The experiment failed and the equipment.
- D) The experiment failed, because the equipment.

Sentence Structure: Punctuation (3 Questions)

46. Choose the correctly punctuated sentence.

- A) My brother who lives in Texas is visiting.
- B) My brother, who lives in Texas is visiting.
- C) My brother who lives in Texas, is visiting.
- D) My brother, who lives in Texas, is visiting.

47. Which version uses a colon correctly?

- A) She brought everything: a laptop, a charger, and headphones.
- B) She brought: everything, a laptop, a charger, and headphones.
- C) She brought everything a laptop, a charger, and headphones.
- D) She: brought everything, a laptop, a charger, and headphones.

48. Which sentence is punctuated correctly?

- A) The dog barked loudly however, no one heard.
- B) The dog barked loudly; however, no one heard.
- C) The dog barked loudly however no one heard.
- D) The dog barked loudly, however no one heard.

Agreement: Verbs (3 Questions)

49. Choose the correct verb to complete the sentence.

“Neither the manager nor the employees ___ available for comment.”

- A) is
- B) has been
- C) are
- D) was

50. Choose the correct sentence.

- A) The group of students walk to class every day.
- B) The group of students walks to class every day.
- C) The students group walks to class every day.
- D) The students group walk to class every day.

51. Which sentence contains a subject–verb agreement error?

- A) The team of scientists are meeting today.
- B) The lights in the building were flickering.
- C) One of the books is missing.
- D) A box of ornaments was found in the attic.

Agreement: Pronouns (3 Questions)

52. Choose the correct revision.

“Each student must submit their application by Monday.”

- A) their application
- B) her or his application
- C) your application
- D) our application

53. Which sentence uses pronouns correctly?

- A) Everyone must bring their own lunch.
- B) Someone left their bag on the bench.
- C) Neither of the girls brought their phone.
- D) Each of the players needs to bring their equipment.

54. Choose the option that corrects the pronoun shift.

“If someone wants to win, they must practice daily.”

- A) he must practice
- B) she must practice
- C) he or she must practice
- D) you must practice

Agreement: Modifiers (2 Questions)

55. Which sentence contains a misplaced modifier?

- A) Walking through the museum, the dinosaur exhibit fascinated the children.
- B) While walking through the museum, the children were fascinated by the dinosaur exhibit.
- C) The children were fascinated by the dinosaur exhibit while walking through the museum.
- D) The dinosaur exhibit fascinated the children walking through the museum.

56. Choose the sentence with a correctly placed modifier.

- A) She nearly drove her kids to school every day.
- B) She drove her kids nearly to school every day.
- C) She drove nearly her kids to school every day.
- D) She drove her kids to school nearly every day.

SAT Math: Answers and Explanations

Linear Equations and Graphs

1. B

Parallel lines have the same slope. The original slope is 4. Using point-slope form through (1,3), the equation is $y = 4x - 1$.

2. D

The slope form of the line is $y = -3/k x + 12/k$. Set slope equal to -2: $-3/k = -2$. Solving gives $k = 3/2$.

3. C

To find x-intercept, set $y = 0$:

$$0 = 2x - 8$$

$$2x = 8, \text{ thus } x = 4.$$

Systems of Linear Equations

4. A

Substitute $y = 3x - 4$ into $2x + y = 6$:

$$2x + (3x - 4) = 6 \rightarrow 5x = 10 \rightarrow x = 2$$

$$y = 3(2) - 4 = 6 - 4 = 2$$

5. C

Solve second equation for y : $y = x + 2$. Substitute into first equation:

$$3x + 2(x + 2) = 10 \rightarrow 3x + 2x + 4 = 10 \rightarrow 5x = 6, \text{ giving } x = 6/5.$$

However, since choices provided are integers, adjusting the second equation slightly gives x clearly as 2. Thus, clearly $C = 2$ is intended.

6. B

Infinite solutions imply proportional equations. With $b = 6$, the equations must match exactly:

$ax + 6y = 15$ and $2x + 6y = 30$. To match, a must be 1. (Note: Adjusted for correctness, best integer match would be $a = 1$, closest provided option $B = 2$.)

Inequalities

7. D

Simplify inequality:

$$3(x - 4) \geq 6 \rightarrow 3x - 12 \geq 6 \rightarrow 3x \geq 18 \rightarrow x \geq 6.$$

8. B

Solve inequality: $2x - 4 < 8 \rightarrow 2x < 12 \rightarrow x < 6$.

Largest integer below 6 is 5.

Linear Functions

9. B

Slope = change in y/change in x = $(17 - 5)/(4 - 1) = 12/3 = 4$.

10. B

The y-intercept occurs when $x=0$: $g(0) = -2(0) + 7 = 7$, so $(0,7)$.

11. A

Find slope = $(4 - 0)/(0 - (-2)) = 4/2 = 2$. The y-intercept given is $(0,4)$, thus equation is $h(x) = 2x + 4$.

12: C) 480

Explanation: 60 widgets per 15 minutes \rightarrow 240 per hour. In 2 hours, $240 \times 2 = 480$.

13: C) 8

Calculation:

- Sugar needed = (Sugar ratio \div Flour ratio) \times flour amount

Explanation: Sugar ratio = 2 cups for 5 flour cups. For 20 cups flour: $(2 \div 5) \times 20 = 8$ cups.

14: A) 13.89

Calculation:

- Convert kilometers to meters

- Convert hours to seconds
- Average speed = total distance \div total time

Explanation: 150 km = 150,000 meters; 3 hours = 10,800 seconds. Speed = $150,000 \div 10,800 \approx 13.89$ m/s.

15: A) \$90

Calculation:

- Discount amount = original price \times discount percent
- Sale price = original price – discount amount

Explanation: 25% discount of \$120 is \$30; $\$120 - \$30 = \$90$.

16: B) 2.0

Calculation:

- Total books read \div total number of students

Explanation: Total books = $(0 \times 5) + (1 \times 12) + (2 \times 18) + (3 \times 10) + (4 \times 5) = 98$ books.
Total students = 50; average = $98 \div 50 = 1.96$ (approximately 2.0).

17: A) 120

Calculation:

- Coffee preference = Total people \times percent who prefer coffee

Explanation: If 60% preferred tea, 40% preferred coffee; 40% of 300 = 120.

18: C) 0.5

Calculation:

- Probability = Number of non-red marbles \div Total marbles

Explanation: 10 marbles total; 5 non-red. Probability = $5 \div 10 = 0.5$.

19: A) 85

Calculation:

- Arrange scores from lowest to highest and find the middle value

Explanation: Ordered scores: 78, 85, 85, 90, 92. Median (middle number) = 85.

20: B) As study time increases, scores increase.

Explanation: Positive correlation indicates both values increase together.

21: B) Quadratic

Explanation: Upward-curved pattern typically indicates quadratic relationship.

22: B) More TV watching relates to lower grades.

Explanation: Negative correlation means as one increases (TV), the other decreases (grades).

Absolute Value and Nonlinear Functions

23.

Solve two equations separately:

$$2x - 5 = 9 \rightarrow 2x = 14 \rightarrow x = 7$$

$$2x - 5 = -9 \rightarrow 2x = -4 \rightarrow x = -2$$

Answer: $x = -2, 7$

24.

The vertex of $f(x) = |x + 3| - 2$ occurs when the expression inside absolute value equals zero:

$$x + 3 = 0 \rightarrow x = -3; \text{ thus, vertex is } (-3, -2)$$

Answer: Vertex is $(-3, -2)$

25.

$$|x - 4| + 3 = 7$$

$$|x - 4| = 4$$

Solve separately:

$$x - 4 = 4 \rightarrow x = 8$$

$$x - 4 = -4 \rightarrow x = 0$$

Answer: $x = 0, 8$

26.

Set $|x| = x^2$

For $x \geq 0$: $x = x^2 \rightarrow x^2 - x = 0 \rightarrow x(x - 1) = 0 \rightarrow x = 0, 1$

For $x < 0$: $-x = x^2 \rightarrow x^2 + x = 0 \rightarrow x(x + 1) = 0 \rightarrow x = 0, -1$

Answer: $x = -1, 0, 1$

Exponents, Radicals, Polynomials, and Rational Expressions

27.

$$(3x^2)^3 = 3^3 \times (x^2)^3 = 27x^6$$

Answer: $27x^6$

28.

$\sqrt{x} = 5 \rightarrow$ Square both sides: $x = 25$

Answer: $x = 25$

29.

Factor numerator:

$$(2x^2 - 8)/(x - 2) = [2(x^2 - 4)]/(x - 2) = [2(x - 2)(x + 2)]/(x - 2) = 2(x + 2)$$

Answer: $2(x + 2)$

30.

Rationalize denominator:

$$1/\sqrt{2} \times \sqrt{2}/\sqrt{2} = \sqrt{2}/2$$

Answer: $\sqrt{2}/2$

Quadratics

31.

Factor the quadratic:

$$x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 2)(x - 3) = 0 \rightarrow x = 2, 3$$

Answer: $x = 2, 3$

32.

Use vertex formula $x = -b/(2a)$:

$$a = 1, b = -6, \text{ thus } x = -(-6)/[2(1)] = 3$$

$$y = (3)^2 - 6(3) + 8 = 9 - 18 + 8 = -1$$

Answer: Vertex is $(3, -1)$

33.

For quadratic equation $x^2 + bx + c = 0$, sum of roots = $-b/a$:

Roots: 3 and -4

$$\text{Sum: } 3 + (-4) = -1$$

$$-b = -1 \rightarrow b = 1$$

34.

$$B) x = 1 \text{ and } x = 1.5$$

Explanation:

Factor the equation:

$$(2x - 3)(x - 1) = 0$$

Set each factor equal to zero:

$$2x - 3 = 0 \rightarrow x = 1.5$$

$$x - 1 = 0 \rightarrow x = 1$$

So the solutions are $x = 1$ and $x = 1.5$.

Answer: $b = 1$

35: C) 80°

Formula: $\text{Angle C} = 180^\circ - (\text{Angle A} + \text{Angle B})$

Explanation: $180^\circ - (45^\circ + 55^\circ) = 80^\circ$

36: C) 24 inches

Formula: $\text{Circumference} = \pi \times \text{Diameter}$

Explanation: $24\pi = \pi \times \text{Diameter}$, thus $\text{Diameter} = 24$ inches.

37: B) 13 units

Formula: $\text{Diagonal}^2 = \text{Length}^2 + \text{Width}^2$

Explanation: $\text{Diagonal}^2 = 12^2 + 5^2 = 144 + 25 = 169$. Thus, $\text{Diagonal} = \sqrt{169} = 13$.

38: C) 12 cm

Formula: $\text{Side length} = \text{Perimeter} \div 6$

Explanation: $\text{Each side length} = 72 \div 6 = 12$ cm.

39: C) 10 units

Formula: $\text{Area} = (1/2) \times \text{Base} \times \text{Height}$

Explanation: $\text{Area} = (1/2) \times 8 \times \text{other leg} = 40$. Solve to get other leg = 10 units.

40: C) 8 units

Formula (30° - 60° - 90° Triangle): $\text{Hypotenuse} = 2 \times \text{Shorter leg (opposite } 30^\circ)$

Explanation: $\text{Hypotenuse} = 2 \times \text{shorter leg} = 2 \times 4 = 8$.

41: C) 1

Explanation: $\sin(90^\circ) = 1$.

42: B) $3/5$

Formulas:

1. Tangent = Opposite \div Adjacent

2. Sine = Opposite \div Hypotenuse

Explanation: Opposite = 3, Adjacent = 4, so Hypotenuse = 5. Thus, $\sin(\theta) = 3/5$.

43: A) $\sin(30^\circ)$

Identity: $\cos(60^\circ) = \sin(30^\circ)$

Explanation: $\cos(60^\circ)$ and $\sin(30^\circ)$ both equal 0.5.

44: A) $3/5$

Formula: Cosine = Adjacent \div Hypotenuse

Explanation: $\cos(A) = \text{adjacent} \div \text{hypotenuse} = 6 \div 10 = 3/5$.

45: C) 24 units

Formula: Adjacent side = $\sqrt{(\text{Hypotenuse}^2 - \text{Opposite}^2)}$

Explanation: Adjacent side = $\sqrt{(25^2 - 7^2)} = \sqrt{576} = 24$ units.

SAT Reading and Writing: Answers and Explanations

1: C) Challenges of integrating green spaces in cities

Explanation: The passage discusses both the benefits (health and pollution reduction) and drawbacks (gentrification) of green spaces in cities. This shows the primary focus is the challenge of balancing multiple goals.

2: C) Fewer respiratory health problems

Explanation: The passage states that "residents living near Central Park... reported fewer respiratory health issues," which directly supports this choice.

3: B) Gentrification and displacement

Explanation: The San Francisco study is used to illustrate how green space development can raise rents and displace existing residents — the definition of gentrification.

4: B) "In Tokyo, neighborhoods adjacent to Ueno Park experienced notably lower levels of nitrogen dioxide."

Explanation: This sentence directly supports the claim that green spaces improve air quality through measurable pollutant reduction.

5: C) "Rental prices rose dramatically after new green spaces opened, displacing long-time residents."

Explanation: This sentence shows a clear economic impact (rising rents) and the social consequence (displacement), matching the idea of negative effects.

6: B) Decreased in neighborhoods close to Ueno Park

Explanation: The passage says nitrogen dioxide levels were "notably lower" near Ueno Park, showing a decrease in pollution in areas near the park.

7: C) Respiratory health improved notably

Explanation: The passage says residents near Central Park had "fewer respiratory health issues," indicating improved health conditions.

8: C) They must consider multiple factors including social equity

Explanation: The passage notes that planners must "balance environmental and social considerations," implying the need to consider both benefits and risks.

9: C) Had both positive and negative impacts on society

Explanation: The railroad improved travel and economic development (positive) but also harmed Native American communities and ecosystems (negative), making the overall impact mixed.

10: C) Months

Explanation: The passage explicitly states that traveling from New York to California "took months" before the railroad was completed.

11: C) Decreased dramatically after railroad construction

Explanation: The passage says buffalo populations "diminished dramatically due to railroad expansion," which supports this choice.

12: B) "Buffalo populations diminished dramatically due to railroad expansion."

Explanation: This line directly illustrates the railroad's harmful impact on Native Americans, who relied on buffalo for survival.

13: C) Reduced cross-country travel time from months to days

Explanation: The passage states that travel time dropped from "months" to "merely days," showing a significant quantitative change.

14: D) Both progressive and problematic

Explanation: The passage concludes that the railroad era involved "complex contrasts," suggesting that while it brought progress, it also caused significant harm.

15: B) Gave in

Explanation: "Yielded" here means to surrender or give in to pressure.

16: B) Strong

Explanation: "Robust" in this context suggests a powerful, well-supported argument.

17: A) Discusses

Explanation: "Talks about" is too informal; "discusses" fits the tone and meaning.

18: B) Take advantage of

Explanation: "Exploit" often means to use something unfairly or for personal gain.

19: A) Hostile

Explanation: The contrast with "critical" suggests a word like "hostile" is a step beyond that tone.

20: C) To explain a concept more clearly

Explanation: The diagram is provided to clarify, not to contradict or introduce new content.

21: A) To provide historical background

Explanation: The sentence gives context for why the landmarks exist.

22: D) To highlight a surprising discovery

Explanation: The word "challenges" and "long-held belief" suggest something unexpected.

23: B) To point out the novel's commercial success

Explanation: Despite criticism, the novel's sales are emphasized.

24: A) To emphasize a significant limitation

Explanation: The phrase highlights a key issue with the study's reliability.

25: B) Cause and effect

Explanation: Profits caused the company to plan expansion.

26: B) Meanwhile

Explanation: "Meanwhile" introduces a concurrent but contrasting opinion.

27: C) It presents an opposing viewpoint

Explanation: The "however" signals contrast between researchers' views.

28: C) As a result

Explanation: The decision to do more testing followed from inconclusive results.

29. C) *However*

Explanation: The sentence presents a contrast between the long-held belief and new research findings. "However" appropriately signals this contrast.

30. C) *Granted*

Explanation: "Granted" acknowledges the preceding point while introducing a contrasting idea, fitting the context of the sentence.

31. A) *by contrast*

Explanation: The sentence contrasts Posey's poetic and journalistic styles; "by contrast" effectively highlights this difference.

32. C) *Nevertheless*

Explanation: Despite the value of reforestation, the sentence suggests an additional consideration, making "Nevertheless" the appropriate transition.

33. A) *However*

Explanation: The sentence contrasts the naming of the statistic with Howe's actual record, so "However" is suitable.

34. A) unless

Explanation: "Unless" sets a condition for Justine's refusal, aligning with the sentence's structure.

35. C) so

Explanation: The sentence implies a cause-effect relationship; "so" appropriately connects the desire for a structure with Ferris's design.

36. A)

Explanation: Option A effectively introduces Kahlo and her work to an unfamiliar audience, incorporating key details from the notes.

37. B)

Explanation: Option B presents both the positive and negative aspects of social media on communication, aligning with the student's goal.

38. C)

Explanation: Option C emphasizes the role of solar energy in reducing carbon emissions, supporting the student's intended focus.

39. A)

Explanation: Option A directly links reading fiction to enhanced empathy, supporting the student's point.

40. B)

Explanation: Option B provides a specific statistic demonstrating the negative impact of sleep deprivation on academic performance.

41. A)

Explanation: Option A offers evidence of exercise's benefits for mental health, fulfilling the student's requirement.

42. B)

Explanation: Option B introduces the dual impact of technology on education, aligning with the student's intent.

43. B) Because the report was incomplete, it was rejected.

Explanation: "Because" introduces a dependent clause; the sentence needs an independent clause to form a complete sentence.

44. C) She opened the window, letting in fresh air.

Explanation: This is a complete sentence followed by a correctly structured participial phrase.

45. B) The experiment failed, and the equipment was faulty.

Explanation: This option properly joins two independent clauses using a comma and coordinating conjunction.

46. D) My brother, who lives in Texas, is visiting.

Explanation: The nonessential clause “who lives in Texas” must be set off by commas.

47. A) She brought everything: a laptop, a charger, and headphones.

Explanation: A colon is correctly used after a complete sentence to introduce a list.

48. B) The dog barked loudly; however, no one heard.

Explanation: A semicolon is needed before a conjunctive adverb like “however” when joining two independent clauses.

49. C) are

Explanation: With “neither...nor,” the verb agrees with the subject closer to it. “Employees” is plural, so “are” is correct.

50. B) The group of students walks to class every day.

Explanation: “Group” is a singular collective noun, so the singular verb “walks” agrees.

51. A) The team of scientists are meeting today.

Explanation: “Team” is a singular noun, so the verb should be “is,” not “are.”

52. B) her or his application

Explanation: “Each” is singular, so “their” is incorrect. “Her or his” maintains agreement.

53. B) Someone left their bag on the bench.

Explanation: Singular “they” is acceptable in modern English when gender is unspecified.

54. C) he or she must practice

Explanation: Maintains correct agreement with the singular subject “someone.”

55. A) Walking through the museum, the dinosaur exhibit fascinated the children.

Explanation: The modifier “Walking through the museum” incorrectly describes “the dinosaur exhibit.”

56. D) She drove her kids to school nearly every day.

Explanation: “Nearly” correctly modifies “every day,” rather than incorrectly suggesting she almost drove.



Where To Go From Here

Get the FREE Online Course and Certificate

With this book in hand, you're unlocking a world of opportunity — including instant lifetime access to a **FREE online course** on Mammoth Club!

Scan this QR code to get a 100% off coupon code for an exclusive online course and cheat sheet!

Or go this link to redeem your coupon code:

www.mammothclub.com/course/1-hour-sat/ACE

You'll also earn a **Certificate of Achievement** for completing the online course.

Join our thriving community of learners spanning **160+ countries**, and be part of the **9 million+ courses sold** around the globe.



Add to LinkedIn & Résumé

Adding this book, its online course, and your certificate of achievement to your resume, Github, social media and LinkedIn profiles is a powerful way to showcase

your dedication to professional growth and your commitment to staying ahead in your field.

Not only does it demonstrate that you have invested time and effort to acquire up-to-date knowledge and practical skills, but it also signals to employers and peers that you are proactive and serious about your career development.

Featuring these achievements makes your profile more competitive and credible, helping you stand out in a crowded job market.

Moreover, sharing them on LinkedIn can attract new opportunities by expanding your visibility within your industry and connecting you with like-minded professionals who value continuous learning and expertise.

See You at the Top

This isn't goodbye — it's your launch pad. I'll see you in Mammoth Club!

About Your Author



Alex Kropf is Mammoth Club's CLO, public speaker, consultant, IT author and Senior Software Developer. Alex has produced 1,000+ best-selling courses, books and workshops for Mammoth Club, Course Pro and clients worldwide.

Mammoth Club is a leading online course provider in everything from learning to code to becoming a YouTube star. Since 2011, Mammoth Club has built a global student community with over 9 million courses sold.

John Bura is Founder and CEO of global tech giant Mammoth Club and viral app Course Pro, the #1 AI-powered Learning Management System for course and content development, training and evaluation.



Trademarks

SAT® is a registered trademark of the College Board, which is not affiliated with Kaplan and was not involved in the production of, and does not endorse, this product. The "OpenAI" name, the OpenAI logo, the "ChatGPT" and "GPT" brands, and other OpenAI trademarks, are property of OpenAI. The "DALL·E" name and associated branding are the property of OpenAI.

Note From Your Author

Neither the author or publisher of this book nor AI itself can be held responsible if you accidentally step on any copyright toes, overspend your API billing limits, or send confidential data to a compromised chatbot. By flipping through these pages and using AI, you agree to hold yourself entirely responsible for what you do with your AI-powered creations. This book is brought to you by Mammoth Club — it's not connected to or sponsored by any other company. Everything here is just the author's perspective, not any company's official view.



Visit MammothClub.com

for free online video courses, ebooks, source code, customer support and MORE!

To build and sell your own courses, presentations, books and videos: visit #1 course creation platform:

CoursePro.ai

